



Overview for Avaya Communication Manager

Release 2.0
555-233-767
Issue 5
November 2003

**Copyright 2003, Avaya Inc.
All Rights Reserved**

Notice

Every effort was made to ensure that the information in this document was complete and accurate at the time of printing. However, information is subject to change.

Warranty

Avaya Inc. provides a limited warranty on this product. Refer to your sales agreement to establish the terms of the limited warranty. In addition, Avaya's standard warranty language as well as information regarding support for this product, while under warranty, is available through the following Web site: <http://www.avaya.com/support>.

Preventing Toll Fraud

"Toll fraud" is the unauthorized use of your telecommunications system by an unauthorized party (for example, a person who is not a corporate employee, agent, subcontractor, or is not working on your company's behalf). Be aware that there may be a risk of toll fraud associated with your system and that, if toll fraud occurs, it can result in substantial additional charges for your telecommunications services.

Avaya Fraud Intervention

If you suspect that you are being victimized by toll fraud and you need technical assistance or support, in the United States and Canada, call the Technical Service Center's Toll Fraud Intervention Hotline at 1-800-643-2353.

How to Get Help

For additional support telephone numbers, go to the Avaya support Web site: <http://www.avaya.com/support>. If you are:

- Within the United States, click the *Escalation Management* link. Then click the appropriate link for the type of support you need.
- Outside the United States, click the *Escalation Management* link. Then click the *International Services* link that includes telephone numbers for the international Centers of Excellence.

Providing Telecommunications Security

Telecommunications security (of voice, data, and/or video communications) is the prevention of any type of intrusion to (that is, either unauthorized or malicious access to or use of) your company's telecommunications equipment by some party.

Your company's "telecommunications equipment" includes both this Avaya product and any other voice/data/video equipment that could be accessed via this Avaya product (that is, "networked equipment").

An "outside party" is anyone who is not a corporate employee, agent, subcontractor, or is not working on your company's behalf. Whereas, a "malicious party" is anyone (including someone who may be otherwise authorized) who accesses your telecommunications equipment with either malicious or mischievous intent.

Such intrusions may be either to/through synchronous (time-multiplexed and/or circuit-based) or asynchronous (character-, message-, or packet-based) equipment or interfaces for reasons of:

- Utilization (of capabilities special to the accessed equipment)
- Theft (such as, of intellectual property, financial assets, or toll facility access)
- Eavesdropping (privacy invasions to humans)
- Mischief (troubling, but apparently innocuous, tampering)
- Harm (such as harmful tampering, data loss or alteration, regardless of motive or intent)

Be aware that there may be a risk of unauthorized intrusions associated with your system and/or its networked equipment. Also realize that, if such an intrusion should occur, it could result in a variety of losses to your company (including but not limited to, human/data privacy, intellectual property, material assets, financial resources, labor costs, and/or legal costs).

Responsibility for Your Company's Telecommunications Security

The final responsibility for securing both this system and its networked equipment rests with you - Avaya's customer system administrator, your telecommunications peers, and your managers. Base the fulfillment of your responsibility on acquired knowledge and resources from a variety of sources including but not limited to:

- Installation documents
- System administration documents
- Security documents
- Hardware-/software-based security tools
- Shared information between you and your peers
- Telecommunications security experts

To prevent intrusions to your telecommunications equipment, you and your peers should carefully program and configure:

- Your Avaya-provided telecommunications systems and their interfaces
- Your Avaya-provided software applications, as well as their underlying hardware/software platforms and interfaces
- Any other equipment networked to your Avaya products

TCP/IP Facilities

Customers may experience differences in product performance, reliability and security depending upon network configurations/design and topologies, even when the product performs as warranted.

Standards Compliance

Avaya Inc. is not responsible for any radio or television interference caused by unauthorized modifications of this equipment or the substitution or attachment of connecting cables and equipment other than those specified by Avaya Inc. The correction of interference caused by such unauthorized modifications, substitution or attachment will be the responsibility of the user. Pursuant to Part 15 of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Rules, the user is cautioned that changes or modifications not expressly approved by Avaya Inc. could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

Product Safety Standards

This product complies with and conforms to the following international Product Safety standards as applicable:

Safety of Information Technology Equipment, IEC 60950, 3rd Edition including all relevant national deviations as listed in Compliance with IEC for Electrical Equipment (IECEE) CB-96A.

Safety of Information Technology Equipment, CAN/CSA-C22.2 No. 60950-00 / UL 60950, 3rd Edition

Safety Requirements for Customer Equipment, ACA Technical Standard (TS) 001 - 1997

One or more of the following Mexican national standards, as applicable: NOM 001 SCFI 1993, NOM SCFI 016 1993, NOM 019 SCFI 1998

The equipment described in this document may contain Class 1 LASER Device(s). These devices comply with the following standards:

- EN 60825-1, Edition 1.1, 1998-01
- 21 CFR 1040.10 and CFR 1040.11.

The LASER devices operate within the following parameters:

- Maximum power output: -5 dBm to -8 dBm
- Center Wavelength: 1310 nm to 1360 nm

Luokan 1 Laserlaite
Klass 1 Laser Apparat

Use of controls or adjustments or performance of procedures other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposures. Contact your Avaya representative for more laser product information.

Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC) Standards

This product complies with and conforms to the following international EMC standards and all relevant national deviations:

Limits and Methods of Measurement of Radio Interference of Information Technology Equipment, CISPR 22:1997 and EN55022:1998.

Information Technology Equipment – Immunity Characteristics – Limits and Methods of Measurement, CISPR 24:1997 and EN55024:1998, including:

- Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) IEC 61000-4-2
- Radiated Immunity IEC 61000-4-3
- Electrical Fast Transient IEC 61000-4-4
- Lightning Effects IEC 61000-4-5
- Conducted Immunity IEC 61000-4-6
- Mains Frequency Magnetic Field IEC 61000-4-8
- Voltage Dips and Variations IEC 61000-4-11
- Powerline Harmonics IEC 61000-3-2
- Voltage Fluctuations and Flicker IEC 61000-3-3

Federal Communications Commission Statement

Part 15:

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

Part 68: Answer-Supervision Signaling

Allowing this equipment to be operated in a manner that does not provide proper answer-supervision signaling is in violation of Part 68 rules. This equipment returns answer-supervision signals to the public switched network when:

- answered by the called station,
- answered by the attendant, or
- routed to a recorded announcement that can be administered by the customer premises equipment (CPE) user.

This equipment returns answer-supervision signals on all direct inward dialed (DID) calls forwarded back to the public switched telephone network. Permissible exceptions are:

- A call is unanswered.
- A busy tone is received.
- A reorder tone is received.

Avaya attests that this registered equipment is capable of providing users access to interstate providers of operator services through the use of access codes. Modification of this equipment by call aggregators to block access dialing codes is a violation of the Telephone Operator Consumers Act of 1990.

REN Number

For MCC1, SCC1, CMC1, G600, and G650 Media Gateways:

This equipment complies with Part 68 of the FCC rules. On either the rear or inside the front cover of this equipment is a label that contains, among other information, the FCC registration number, and ringer equivalence number (REN) for this equipment. If requested, this information must be provided to the telephone company.

For G350 and G700 Media Gateways:

This equipment complies with Part 68 of the FCC rules and the requirements adopted by the ACTA. On the rear of this equipment is a label that contains, among other information, a product identifier in the format US:AAAEQ##TXXXX. The digits represented by ## are the ringer equivalence number (REN) without a decimal point (for example, 03 is a REN of 0.3). If requested, this number must be provided to the telephone company.

For all media gateways:

The REN is used to determine the quantity of devices that may be connected to the telephone line. Excessive RENs on the telephone line may result in devices not ringing in response to an incoming call. In most, but not all areas, the sum of RENs should not exceed 5.0. To be certain of the number of devices that may be connected to a line, as determined by the total RENs, contact the local telephone company.

REN is not required for some types of analog or digital facilities.

Means of Connection

Connection of this equipment to the telephone network is shown in the following tables.

For MCC1, SCC1, CMC1, G600, and G650 Media Gateways:

Manufacturer's Port Identifier	FIC Code	SOC/REN/ A.S. Code	Network Jacks
Off premises station	OL13C	9.0F	RJ2GX, RJ21X, RJ11C
DID trunk	02RV2-T	0.0B	RJ2GX, RJ21X
CO trunk	02GS2	0.3A	RJ21X
	02LS2	0.3A	RJ21X
Tie trunk	TL31M	9.0F	RJ2GX
Basic Rate Interface	02IS5	6.0F, 6.0Y	RJ49C
1.544 digital interface	04DU9-BN	6.0F	RJ48C, RJ48M
	04DU9-IKN	6.0F	RJ48C, RJ48M
	04DU9-ISN	6.0F	RJ48C, RJ48M
120A4 channel service unit	04DU9-DN	6.0Y	RJ48C

For G350 and G700 Media Gateways:

Manufacturer's Port Identifier	FIC Code	SOC/REN/A.S. Code	Network Jacks
Ground Start CO trunk	02GS2	1.0A	RJ11C
DID trunk	02RV2-T	AS.0	RJ11C
Loop Start CO trunk	02LS2	0.5A	RJ11C
1.544 digital interface	04DU9-BN	6.0Y	RJ48C
	04DU9-DN	6.0Y	RJ48C
	04DU9-IKN	6.0Y	RJ48C
	04DU9-ISN	6.0Y	RJ48C
Basic Rate Interface	02IS5	6.0F	RJ49C

For all media gateways:

If the terminal equipment (for example, the media server or media gateway) causes harm to the telephone network, the telephone company will notify you in advance that temporary discontinuance of service may be required. But if advance notice is not practical, the telephone company will notify the customer as soon as possible. Also, you will be advised of your right to file a complaint with the FCC if you believe it is necessary.

The telephone company may make changes in its facilities, equipment, operations or procedures that could affect the operation of the equipment. If this happens, the telephone company will provide advance notice in order for you to make necessary modifications to maintain uninterrupted service.

If trouble is experienced with this equipment, for repair or warranty information, please contact the Technical Service Center at 1-800-242-2121 or contact your local Avaya representative. If the equipment is causing harm to the telephone network, the telephone company may request that you disconnect the equipment until the problem is resolved.

A plug and jack used to connect this equipment to the premises wiring and telephone network must comply with the applicable FCC Part 68 rules and requirements adopted by the ACTA. A compliant telephone cord and modular plug is provided with this product. It is designed to be connected to a compatible modular jack that is also compliant. It is recommended that repairs be performed by Avaya certified technicians.

The equipment cannot be used on public coin phone service provided by the telephone company. Connection to party line service is subject to state tariffs. Contact the state public utility commission, public service commission or corporation commission for information.

This equipment, if it uses a telephone receiver, is hearing aid compatible.

Canadian Department of Communications (DOC) Interference Information

This Class A digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe A est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

This equipment meets the applicable Industry Canada Terminal Equipment Technical Specifications. This is confirmed by the registration number. The abbreviation, IC, before the registration number signifies that registration was performed based on a Declaration of Conformity indicating that Industry Canada technical specifications were met. It does not imply that Industry Canada approved the equipment.

DECLARATIONS OF CONFORMITY

United States FCC Part 68 Supplier's Declaration of Conformity (SDoC)

Avaya Inc. in the United States of America hereby certifies that the equipment described in this document and bearing a TIA TSB-168 label identification number complies with the FCC's Rules and Regulations 47 CFR Part 68, and the Administrative Council on Terminal Attachments (ACTA) adopted technical criteria.

Avaya further asserts that Avaya handset-equipped terminal equipment described in this document complies with Paragraph 68.316 of the FCC Rules and Regulations defining Hearing Aid Compatibility and is deemed compatible with hearing aids.

Copies of SDoCs signed by the Responsible Party in the U. S. can be obtained by contacting your local sales representative and are available on the following Web site: <http://www.avaya.com/support>.

All Avaya media servers and media gateways are compliant with FCC Part 68, but many have been registered with the FCC before the SDoC process was available. A list of all Avaya registered products may be found at: <http://www.part68.org> by conducting a search using "Avaya" as manufacturer.

European Union Declarations of Conformity



Avaya Inc. declares that the equipment specified in this document bearing the "CE" (*Conformité Européenne*) mark conforms to the European Union Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive (1999/5/EC), including the Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (89/336/EEC) and Low Voltage Directive (73/23/EEC). This equipment has been certified to meet CTR3 Basic Rate Interface (BRI) and CTR4 Primary Rate Interface (PRI) and subsets thereof in CTR12 and CTR13, as applicable.

Copies of these Declarations of Conformity (DoCs) can be obtained by contacting your local sales representative and are available on the following Web site: <http://www.avaya.com/support>.

Japan

This is a Class A product based on the standard of the Voluntary Control Council for Interference by Information Technology Equipment (VCCI). If this equipment is used in a domestic environment, radio disturbance may occur, in which case, the user may be required to take corrective actions.

この装置は、情報処理装置等電波障害自主規制協議会（VCCI）の基準に基づくクラスA情報技術装置です。この装置を家庭環境で使用すると電波妨害を引き起こすことがあります。この場合には使用者が適切な対策を講ずるよう要求されることがあります。

To order copies of this and other documents:

Call: Avaya Publications Center
Voice 1.800.457.1235 or 1.207.866.6701
FAX 1.800.457.1764 or 1.207.626.7269

Write: Globalware Solutions
200 Ward Hill Avenue
Haverhill, MA 01835 USA
Attention: Avaya Account Management

E-mail: totalware@gwsmail.com

For the most current versions of documentation, go to the Avaya support Web site: <http://www.avaya.com/support>.

Contents

About this book	25
■ What is the purpose of this book?	25
■ Who should read this book?	25
■ What is in this book?	25
■ Conventions used in this book	26
Admonishments	27
■ Trademarks	27
■ How to obtain Avaya books on the Web	28
■ How to order documentation	28
■ How to comment on this book	28
■ How to get help	29
1 Overview of Avaya Communication Manager	31
■ Communication Manager basic offering and advanced offering	32
■ Optional software	32
■ Capacities	32
■ Avaya Installation Wizard	33
Gateway Installation Wizard (GIW)	34
■ Avaya media servers and media gateways	35
S8100 Media Server	35
S8300 Media Server	36
External readable CD ROM	36
S8500 Media Server	36
S8700 Media Server	37
Linux 8.0 support	37
G350 Media Gateway	38
G600 Media Gateway	38
G650 Media Gateway	39
TN2312BP IPSI functionality	40
G700 Media Gateway	40
■ MultiTech gateway support	41
2 Application programming interface (API)	43
■ Adjunct switch application interface (ASAI)	43
■ Communication Manager API	43
■ DAPI	44
■ JTAPI	44

Contents

- TAPI 44
- TSAPI 44

3 Attendant features 45

- Accessing the attendant 45
 - Dial access to attendant 45
 - Individual attendant access 45
 - Recall 45
- Attendant backup 46
- Attendant room status 46
- Attendant functions using Distributed Communications System (DCS) protocol 46
 - Control of trunk group access 46
 - Direct trunk group selection 46
 - Inter-PBX attendant calls 47
- Call handling 47
 - Attendant lockout — privacy 47
 - Attendant split swap 47
 - Attendant vectoring 47
 - Automated attendant 47
 - Backup alerting 48
 - Call waiting 48
 - Calling of inward restricted stations 48
 - Conference 48
 - Intrusion (call offer) 48
 - Listed directory number 48
 - Override of diversion features 49
 - Priority queue 49
 - Release loop operation 49
 - Selective conference mute 49
 - Serial calling 49
 - Timed reminder and attendant timers 50
- Centralized Attendant Service (CAS) 50
- Display 50
- Making calls 50
 - Auto-manual splitting 50
 - Auto start and don't split 51
- Monitoring calls 51
 - Attendant direct trunk group selection 51
 - Crisis alerts to an attendant console 51
 - Direct extension selection with busy lamp field 52
 - Trunk group access 52

Contents

Trunk group busy/warning indicators to attendant	52
Trunk identification by attendant	52
Visually Impaired Attendant Service (VIAS)	53

4 Call center 55

Computer Telephony Integration (CTI) 55

- Adjunct Switch Application Interface (ASAI) 56
 - Adjunct route support for network call redirection 56
 - Co-resident DEFINITY LAN Gateway 57
 - Direct Agent Announcement (DAA) 57
 - Flexible billing 58
 - Pending work mode change 58
 - Trunk group identification 58
 - User-to-User Information (UUI) propagation during manual transfer/conference operations 58
 - VDN override for ASAI messages 59

Automatic Call Distribution (ACD) 59

- Abandoned call search 60
- Adjunct routing 61
- Auto-Available Split (AAS) 61
- Local feedback for queued ACD calls 61
- Queue status indicators 62

Avaya Basic Call Management System (BCMS) 62

- Avaya Business Advocate 63
 - Advocate-related enhancements 63
 - Auto reserve agents 63
 - Call selection override per skill 63
 - Dynamic percentage adjustment 63
 - Dynamic queue position 63
 - Dynamic threshold adjustment 63
 - Logged-in advocate agent counting 63
 - Percent allocation distribution 64
 - Reserve agent time in queue activation 64

Avaya Call Management System (CMS) 64

- Avaya virtual routing 64
 - Enhanced information forwarding 65
- Call center release control 65
- Call prompting 65

Contents

Data collection	65
Data In/Voice Answer (DIVA)	65
■ Call vectoring	66
Advanced vector routing	66
Average Speed of Answer (ASA) routing	66
Best service routing (BSR)	66
Best service routing (BSR) polling over IP without B-channel	66
Expected Wait Time (EWT) routing	67
Call center messaging	67
Holiday vectoring	67
Vector Directory Number (VDN)	67
Class of Restriction (COR) for VDN	67
Display VDN for route-to DAC	68
VDN in a coverage path	68
VDN of origin announcement	68
VDN return destination	68
■ Call Work Codes (CWC)	69
■ Circular station hunt group	69
■ CMS measurement of ATM	69
■ Dialed Number Identification Service (DNIS)	69
■ Direct agent calling	69
■ Dual links to CMS	70
■ Duplicate agent login ID administration	70
Agent-loginID skill pair increase	70
■ Expert Agent Selection (EAS)	70
Add/remove skills	71
Call distribution based on skill	71
Queue to best ISDN support	71
■ Least Occupied Agent (LOA)	71
■ Multiple call handling (forced)	71
■ Multiple split queuing	72
■ Priority queuing	72
■ Reason codes	72
■ Redirection on no answer	72
■ Site statistics for remote port networks	72
■ VuStats	73
Miscellaneous	73
■ Avaya call center features supported on the Avaya G700 Media Gateway	73
■ Caller Information Forwarding (CINFO)	74
■ Multiple music/audio sources	74
■ Network Call Redirection (NCR)	74
ETSI Explicit Call Transfer (ECT) signaling	74

Contents

Network call redirection 2B-channel transfer	75
■ PC Application Software Translation Exchange (PASTE)	75
■ Remote logout of agent	75
■ Service observing	75
Service observing by COR	76
Service observing of VDNs	76
Service observing remote	76
Vector-initiated service observing	76
■ User-to-user information (UUI) over the public network	76
■ Voice Response Integration (VRI)	76

5 Collaboration **77**

Conferencing **77**

■ Abort conference on hang-up	77
■ Conference — three party	77
■ Conference — six party	77
■ Conference/transfer display prompts	78
■ Conference/transfer toggle/swap	78
■ Group listen	78
■ Hold/unhold conference	78
■ Meet-me conference	79
■ No dial tone conferencing	79
■ No hold conference	79
■ Select line appearance conferencing	80
■ Selective conference party display, drop, and mute	80
Selective conference mute	81

Multimedia calling **81**

■ Multimedia Application Server Interface (ASI)	82
■ Multimedia call early answer on vectors and stations	82
■ Multimedia Call Handling (MMCH)	83
■ Multimedia call redirection to multimedia endpoint	83
■ Multimedia data conferencing (T.120) through an ESM	83
■ Multimedia hold, conference, transfer, and drop	83
■ Multimedia queuing with voice announcement	83

Paging and intercom **84**

■ Code calling access	84
■ Group paging	84
■ Intercom — automatic	84
■ Intercom — automatic answer	84

Contents

■ Intercom — dial	85
■ Loudspeaker paging access	85
■ Manual signaling	85
■ Whisper page	86

6 Communication device support 87

■ 2402 DCP telephones	87
■ 2420 DCP telephones	87
Firmware download enhancements	88
Personalized labels for the abbreviated dialing (AD) system list	88
Voice mail retrieval button	88
■ 3410 wireless telephone	88
■ 3606 wireless VoIP telephone	89
■ 4600-series IP telephones	89
4602 and 4602SW IP telephones	89
4602SIP telephone	89
4610SW IP telephone	89
4620 and 4630 IP telephones	90
4690 IP conference room speaker phone	90
Katakana character set	90
Unicode support	90
Voice mail retrieval button	91
■ 6200-series analog telephones	91
■ 6400-series DCP telephones	91
6400 tip/ring interface module	91
■ 8400-series telephones	92
■ Attendant console	92
■ Avaya IP Agent	92
■ Avaya IP Softphone	92
IP Softphone and IP Agent — RoadWarrior mode	93
IP Softphone and IP Agent — Shared Control mode	93
IP Softphone and IP Agent — Telecommuter mode	94
■ Avaya IP Softphone for pocket PC	94
■ Avaya Communication Manager PC console	94
■ Avaya Communication Manager on an S8100 Media Server	95
■ Avaya SoftConsole	95
■ DEFINITY AnyWhere	95
■ Avaya extension to cellular	95

Contents

7 Hospitality	97
■ Alphanumeric dialing	97
■ Attendant room status	97
■ Automatic selection of Direct Inward Dialing (DID) numbers	97
■ Automatic wakeup	98
■ Check-in/check-out	98
■ Custom selection of VIP DID numbers	98
■ Daily wakeup	98
■ Dial-by-name	99
■ Do not disturb	99
■ Dual wakeup	99
■ Housekeeping status	99
■ Names registration	100
■ Property Management System (PMS) digit to insert/delete	100
■ Property Management System (PMS) interface	100
■ Single-digit dialing and mixed station numbering	101
■ Suite check-in	101
■ VIP wakeup	101
■ Wake-up activation using confirmation tones	101
■ Xiox call accounting	101

8 Localization	103
■ Administrable language displays	103
Katakana character set	103
■ Administrable loss plan	103
■ Bellcore calling name ID	104
■ Block collect call	104
■ Busy tone disconnect	104
■ Country-specific localization	104
Italy	104
Distributed Communications Systems (DCS) protocol	104
Japan	105
National private networking support	105
Russia	105
Central Office (CO) support on G700 Media Gateway	105
ISDN/DATS network support	105
Multi-Frequency Packet (MFP) signaling	105

Contents

- E&M signaling — continuous and pulsed 106
- Public network call priority 106
- World class tone detection 106

9 Message integration 107

- Audible message waiting 107
- Avaya Interactive Response (IR) 107
- Centralized voice mail through mode code integration 108
- Dual DCP I-channels 108
- Embedded AUDIX 108
- INTUITY AUDIX 110
 - Avaya IA770 INTUITY AUDIX messaging application
(embedded INTUITY 5.1 messaging — Linux) 111
 - S8100 Media Server embedded INTUITY AUDIX 112
 - AUDIX one-step recording 112
- INTUITY call accounting system 113
- INTUITY lodging 113
- INTUITY lodging call accounting system 114
- Leave Word Calling (LWC) 115
 - Leave Word Calling (LWC) — QSIG/DCS 115
- Manual message waiting 115
- Message demand print 115
- Message retrieval 116
 - Display retrieval 116
 - Speak-to-me 116
- Message Sequence Tracer (MST) enhancements 116
- Mode code interface 117
- Octel integration 117
- QSIG/DCS voice mail interworking 117
 - Multiple QSIG voice mail hunt groups 117
- Voice mail retrieval button 117
- Voice message retrieval 118
- Voice messaging and call coverage 118

10 Mobility 121

- Administration Without Hardware (AWOH) 121
- Automatic Customer Telephone Rearrangement (ACTR) 121

Contents

■ Avaya Wireless Telephone Solutions (AWTS)	122
3410 wireless telephone	122
3606 wireless VoIP telephone	123
■ Avaya extension to cellular/OPS	123
Extension to cellular	123
Off-PBX station (OPS)	124
What's new in extension to cellular/OPS	124
■ E911 ELIN for IP wired extensions	125
■ Personal Station Access (PSA)	127
Don't answer reason code (for PSA-disassociated stations)	127
Name/number permanent display	127
■ Terminal Translation Initialization (TTI)	127
■ TransTalk 9000 digital wireless system	128
■ X-station mobility	128

11 Networking and connectivity 129

Private networking and connectivity 129

Communication device support	129
■ Circuit switched	129
Analog 6200-series	129
Digital telephones	129
2420 DCP telephones	129
6400-series telephones	130
6400 tip/ring interface module	130
8400-series telephones	130
■ Internet Protocol (IP)	130
4600-series IP telephones	130
Katakana character set	130
Voice mail retrieval button	130
Avaya IP Agent	130
Avaya IP Softphone	130
IP Softphone and IP Agent — RoadWarrior mode	130
IP Softphone and IP Agent — Shared Control mode	130
IP Softphone and IP Agent — Telecommuter mode	131
■ Wireless	131
3410 wireless telephone	131
3606 wireless VoIP telephone	131
Port network and gateway connectivity	131
■ Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM)	131

Contents

ATM WAN Spare Processor (WSP) Manager	131
Port Network Connectivity (ATM-PNC)	131
Port Network Connectivity (ATM-PNC) over WAN	132
WAN Spare Processor (WSP)	132
■ Circuit switched	133
Center Stage Switch (CSS)	133
Center Stage Switch (CSS) separation	133
■ Internet Protocol (IP)	133
H.248 media gateway control	133
IP Port Network Connectivity (PNC)	133
Link Recovery	133
■ Separation of Bearer and Signaling	135
Trunk connectivity	136
■ Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM)	136
Circuit Emulation Service (ATM-CES)	136
CMS measurement of ATM	136
■ Circuit switched	136
DS1 trunk service	136
Echo cancellation — with UDS1 circuit pack	136
E1	136
T1	137
■ Internet Protocol (IP)	137
H.323 trunk	137
IP loss groups	137
IP trunks	138
Session Initiation Protocol (SIP)	138
SIP Instant Messaging and Presence (IMPress)	138
SIP trunks	139
Trunk types and signaling	139
■ Auxiliary trunks	139
Advanced Private Line Termination (APLT)	139
■ Central Office (CO)	140
Central Office (CO) support on G700 Media Gateway — Russia	140
■ Digital multiplexed interface	140
Bit-oriented signalling	140
Message-oriented signalling	140
■ Direct Inward Dialing (DID)	141
■ Direct Inward/Outward Dialing (DIOD)	141
■ E&M signaling — continuous and pulsed	141
■ E911 CAMA trunk group	141
■ E911 ELIN for IP wired extensions	141
■ Foreign Exchange (FX)	141

Contents

■ ISDN trunks	141
Automatic Termination Endpoint Identifier (TEI)	142
Call-by-call service selection	142
ETSI functionality	142
Facility and non-facility associated signaling	142
Feature plus	143
ISDN-Basic Rate Interface (ISDN-BRI)	143
Multiple subscriber number (MSN) - limited	144
NT interface on TN556C	145
Presentation restriction	145
Wideband switching	145
■ Multi-Frequency Packet (MFP) signaling — Russia	145
■ National private networking support — Japan	145
■ Personal Central Office Line (PCOL)	145
■ Release Link Trunks (RLT)	146
■ Remote access trunks	146
■ Tie trunks	146
■ Timed automatic disconnect for outgoing trunk calls	146
■ Wide Area Telecommunications Service (WATS)	147
Public networking and connectivity	147
■ Caller ID (ICLID) on analog trunks	147
■ Caller ID (ICLID) on digital trunks	147
■ DS1 trunk service	148
Echo cancellation — with UDS1 circuit pack	148
E1	148
T1	148
■ Flexible billing	148
■ Local exchange trunks	148
800-service trunks	149
Central Office (CO) trunks	149
Digital Service 1 (DS1) trunks	149
Direct Inward Dialing (DID) trunks	149
Direct Inward/Outward Dialing (DIOD) trunks	149
Foreign Exchange (FX) trunks	149
Wide Area Telecommunications Service (WATS)	149
Intelligent networking	149
■ Avaya VoIP Monitoring Manager (VMON)	149
■ Distributed Communications System (DCS) protocol	150
Attendant with DCS	150
Direct trunk group selection	150
Display	150

Contents

DCS automatic circuit assurance	150
DCS over ISDN-PRI D-channel (DCS+)	150
DCS protocol — Italy	150
DCS with reroute	150
QSIG/DCS voice mail interworking	151
■ Electronic Tandem Network (ETN)	151
Automatic alternate conditional routing	151
Trunk signaling and error recovery	151
■ Extension number portability	151
■ Internet Protocol (IP)	152
Alternate gatekeeper and registration addresses	153
Classless Interdomain Routing (CIDR)	153
Multiple network regions per CLAN	153
Multiple location support for network regions	153
Network regions	154
Quality of Service (QoS)	154
802.1p/Q	154
Camp-on/Busy-out	154
Call Admission Control (CAC) bandwidth management	155
CLAN load balancing	155
Codecs	155
Differentiated services (DiffServ)	155
Dynamic jitter buffers	156
Integration with Cajun rules	156
IP overload control	156
QoS for call control	156
QoS for VoIP	157
QoS to endpoints	157
Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP)	157
Shuffling and hairpinning	158
NAT with shuffling	158
TTY	158
TTY over analog and digital trunks	160
TTY over Avaya IP trunks	160
Variable length ping	160
Variable Length Subnet Mask (VLSM)	161
■ QSIG	161
Basic	161
Call completion	161
Call forwarding (diversion)	161
Call Independent Signaling Connections (CISC)	162
Call offer	162
Call transfer	162

Contents

Called name ID	162
Centralized Attendant Service (CAS)	163
Attendant display of Class of Restriction (COR)	163
Attendant return call	163
Priority queue	163
RLT emulation through a PRI	163
Communication Manager/Octel QSIG integration	163
Leave Word Calling (LWC)	163
Manufacturer-Specific Information (MSI)	164
Message Waiting Indication (MWI)	164
Name and number identification	164
Path replacement with path retention	164
QSIG/DCS voice mail interworking	165
Reroute after diversion to voice mail	165
Stand-alone path replacement	165
Supplementary services and rerouting	166
VALU	166
Call coverage	166
Call coverage and CAS	166
Distinctive alerting	166
■ Uniform Dial Plan (UDP)	166
Dial Plan Expansion (DPE)	166
Multi-location dial plans	167
Punctuation on station displays	168
Extended trunk access	168
Data interfaces	169
■ Administered connections	169
■ Data call setup	169
■ Data hot line	169
■ Data modules	170
■ Data privacy	170
■ Data restriction	170
■ Default dialing	170
■ IP asynchronous links	171
■ Modem pooling	171
■ Multimedia application server interface	172
■ Multimedia calling	173
Multimedia call early answer on vectors and stations	173
Multimedia Call Handling (MMCH)	173
Multimedia call redirection to multimedia endpoint	174
Multimedia data conferencing (T.120) through ESM	175
Multimedia hold, conference, transfer, and drop	175

Contents

Multimedia multiple-port networks	175
■ Pass advice of charge information to world class BRI endpoints	175
Call routing	176
■ Alternate facility restriction levels	176
■ Automatic routing features	176
Automatic Alternate Routing (AAR)	176
Automatic Route Selection (ARS)	177
ARS/AAR dialing without FAC	177
AAR/ARS overlap sending	177
AAR/ARS partitioning	177
■ Generalized route selection	178
Look-ahead routing	178
Node number routing	178
Time of day routing	178
■ Multiple location support	179
Multiple location support for network regions	179
■ Traveling class marks	179
Miscellaneous	179
■ Answer detection	179
Answer supervision by time-out	180
Call-classifier board	180
Network answer supervision	180
<hr/>	
12 Reliability and survivability	181
■ Alternate gatekeeper	181
■ ATM WAN spare processor (WSP)	181
■ Local Survivable Processor (LSP)	181
■ Multiple network regions per CLAN	182
■ Power failure transfer	183
■ Survivable Remote EPN (SREPN)	183
<hr/>	
13 Security, privacy, and safety	185
System administrator	185
■ Access security gateway	185
■ AES encryption algorithm for bearer channels	185
■ Alternate facility restriction levels	186

Contents

■ Alternate operations support system alarm number	186
Privacy — attendant lockout	186
■ Authorization codes — 13 digits	187
■ Call restrictions	187
■ Class of Restriction (COR)	187
Block collect call	187
■ Customer-provided equipment alarm	188
■ Data privacy	188
■ Data restriction	188
■ Facility restriction levels and traveling class marks	188
■ H.248 link encryption	188
■ Malicious call trace	189
Malicious call trace logging	189
■ Media encryption	189
Media Encryption requirements	190
License file requirements	191
■ Restriction — controlled	192
■ Security Violation Notification (SVN)	192
■ Signaling encryption for SIP trunks	192
■ Station security codes	192
■ Tripwire security	192
End user	193
■ Backup alerting	193
■ Barrier codes	193
■ Calling/Connected Party Number (CPN) restriction	193
Per call CPN restriction	193
Per line CPN restriction	194
■ Crisis alerts to a digital numeric pager	194
■ Crisis alerts to a digital station	194
■ Crisis alerts to an attendant console	195
Emergency access to the attendant	195
■ E911 CAMA trunk group	195
■ Privacy — auto exclusion	195
■ Privacy — manual exclusion	196
■ Restriction — controlled	196
■ Station lock	196

Contents

14 Special applications 197

15 System management 201

- Administration Without Hardware (AWOH) 201
- Alternate facility restriction levels 201
- Announcements 202
 - Announcement sources for the G700 Media Gateway 202
 - Avaya Voice Announcement over LAN (VAL) 202
 - Avaya Voice Announcement over LAN (VAL) Manager 202
 - Local announcements on the G700 Media Gateway 203
- Authorization codes — 13 digits 203
- Automatic circuit assurance 203
- Automatic transmission measurement system 203
- Barrier codes 204
- Bulletin board 204
- Busy verification of telephones and trunks 204
- Call charge information 205
- Call Detail Recording (CDR) 205
 - Call Detail Recording (CDR) display of physical extension 206
- Call restrictions 206
- Calling party/billing number (CPN/BN) 206
- Class of Restriction (COR) 206
- Class of Service (COS) 207
- Classless Interdomain Routing (CIDR) 207
- Concurrent user sessions 207
- Customer-provided equipment alarm 208
- Customer telephone activation (CTA) 208
- DCS automatic circuit assurance 208
- External device alarming 208
- Facility busy indication 208
- Facility restriction levels and traveling class marks 209
- Facility test calls 209
- Firmware download 209
- Five EPN maximum in MCC1 Media Gateways 209
- Information and reports 211
 - Parsing capabilities for the history report 212
- IP asynchronous links 213
- Malicious call trace 213
 - Malicious call trace logging 213

Contents

■ Music-on-hold	214
Local music-on-hold	214
Multiple music sources	214
■ Restriction — controlled	214
■ Scheduling	215
■ Security Violation Notification (SVN)	215
■ Station security codes	215
■ Tenant partitioning	215
■ Terminal Translation Initialization (TTI)	215
■ Time of day clock synchronization through a LAN source	216
Linux platforms	216
UNIX platforms	216
■ Trunk group circuits	216
■ Variable length ping	216
■ Variable Length Subnet Mask (VLSM)	216
Avaya Integrated Management	217
■ ATM WAN Spare Processor (WSP) Manager	217
■ Avaya Communication Manager configuration manager	217
■ Avaya Communication Manager fault/performance manager	218
■ Avaya site administration	218
■ Avaya voice announcement over LAN (VAL) manager	218
■ Avaya VoIP Monitoring Manager (VMON)	218
Directory	218
■ Administration change notification	219
■ Avaya Directory Enabled Management	219
■ Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP)	220
16 Telecommuting and remote office	221
■ Avaya R300 remote office communicator (R300)	221
■ Coverage of calls redirected off-net (CCRON)	222
■ Extended user administration of redirected calls (telecommuting access)	222
■ IP Softphone and IP Agent — RoadWarrior mode	222
■ IP Softphone and IP Agent — Shared Control mode	222
■ IP Softphone and IP Agent — Telecommuter mode	223
■ IP Softphone	223
■ Off-premises station	223
■ Remote access	223

Contents

17 Telephony	225
■ Abbreviated Dialing (AD)	225
Abbreviated dialing labeling	225
Abbreviated dialing on-hook programming	226
■ Active dialing	226
■ Administrable timeout on call timer	226
■ Alphanumeric dialing	226
■ Automatic Call Back (ACB)	226
Automatic Call Back (ACB) for analog telephones	227
■ Automatic hold	227
■ Bellcore calling name ID	227
■ Bridged call appearance — multi-appearance telephone	227
■ Bridged call appearance — single-line telephone	228
■ Call coverage	228
Alphanumeric field designation	228
Changeable coverage paths	228
Time of day	228
■ Call redirection	229
Call forward busy/don't answer	229
Call forwarding all calls	229
Call forwarding override	229
Call redirection intervals	229
■ Call park	229
■ Call pickup	229
Group call pickup	230
■ Caller ID (ICLID) on analog trunks	230
■ Caller ID (ICLID) on digital trunks	230
■ Circular station hunt group	230
■ Conferencing	230
■ Consult	230
■ Coverage callback	230
■ Coverage incoming call identification	231
■ Disconnecting unanswered calls	231
■ Distinctive ringing	231
■ Enhanced abbreviated dialing	231
■ Enhanced telephone display	232
■ Go to cover	232
■ Hold	232
■ Intercom — automatic answer	232
■ Internal automatic answer	233
■ Last number dialed	233

Contents

■ Local call timer automatic start/stop	233
■ Long hold recall	233
■ Manual originating line service	233
■ Misoperation handling	234
■ Multiappearance preselection and preference	234
■ Multiple level precedence and preemption (MLPP)	235
Announcements for precedence calling	235
Dual homing	236
End office access line hunting	236
Line load control	236
Precedence call waiting	236
Precedence calling	236
Precedence routing	237
Preemption	237
Worldwide numbering and dialing plan (WNDP)	237
■ Night service	238
Enhanced night service	238
■ Personalized ringing	239
■ Posted messages	239
■ Priority calling	239
■ Pull transfer	240
■ Recall signaling	240
■ Recorded telephone dictation access	240
■ Reset shift call	240
■ Ringback queuing	240
■ Ringer cutoff	241
■ Ringing — abbreviated and delayed	241
■ Ringing options	241
■ Send all calls	241
■ Special dial tone	241
■ Station hunting	242
■ Station hunt before coverage	242
■ Station self display	242
■ Station used as a virtual extension	242
■ Support for the Hewlett Packard DL380G2 server	242
■ Telephone display	243
■ Telephone self administration	243
■ Temporary bridged appearance	243
■ Terminating extension group	243
■ Time of day routing	244
■ Timed call disconnection for outgoing trunk calls	244

Contents

■ Transfer	244
Abort transfer	245
Transfer — outgoing trunk to outgoing trunk	245
Transfer recall	245
Transfer upon hang-up	245
Trunk-to-trunk transfer	245
■ Trunk flash	246

Index	247
--------------	------------

About this book

What is the purpose of this book?

This book provides general information about the features and capabilities of Avaya Communication Manager. It also discusses practical and creative applications for the various platforms that run Communication Manager.

For details about changes for the most current release, see the *Highlights of Avaya Communication Manager*, 555-233-783.

Who should read this book?

This book is written for those who are considering the purchase of Communication Manager, and for Avaya representatives and distributors who need high-level information about the system and how it can be used.

What is in this book?

This book outlines all Communication Manager features and capabilities that are available world-wide.

⇒ NOTE:

Some products are unavailable in some countries. Please check with your local distributor for further information about what features are available to you.

Conventions used in this book

Become familiar with the following terms and conventions. They help you use this book with Communication Manager.

- Commands are printed in bold face as follows: **command**.
We show complete commands in this book, but you can usually type an abbreviated version of the command. For example, **list configuration station** can be typed as **list config sta**.
- Form displays and names of fields are printed in constant width as follows:
`form display`.
A “form” is the display of fields and prompts that appear on a terminal monitor screen.
- Variables are printed in italics as follows: *variable*.
- Keys and buttons are printed as follows: KEY.
- To move to a certain field, you can use the TAB key, arrows, or the ENTER key (the ENTER key may appear as the RETURN key on your keyboard).
- If you use terminal emulation software, you need to determine what keys correspond to ENTER, RETURN, CANCEL, HELP, NEXT PAGE, etc.
- We show commands and screens from the most recent release of Communication Manager and refer to the most current books. Please substitute the appropriate commands for your system and refer to the manuals you have available.
- If you need help constructing a command or completing a field entry, remember to use HELP.
 - When you press HELP at any point on the command line, a list of available commands appears.
 - When you press HELP with your cursor in a field on a screen, a list of valid entries for that field appears.
- The status line or message line can be found near the bottom of your monitor display. This is where the system displays messages for you. Check the message line to see how the system responds to your input. Write down the message if you need to call our helpline.
- When a procedure requires you to press ENTER to save your changes, the screen you were working on clears and the cursor returns to the command prompt.
The message line shows “command successfully completed” to indicate that the system accepted your changes.

Admonishments

Admonishments in this book have the following meanings:



Tip:

Draws attention to information that you may find helpful.



NOTE:

Draws attention to information that you must heed.



CAUTION:

Denotes possible harm to software, possible loss of data, or possible service interruptions.



WARNING:

Denotes possible harm to hardware or equipment.



DANGER:

Denotes possible harm or injury to your body.



SECURITY ALERT:

Indicates when system administration may leave your system open to toll fraud.

Trademarks

All trademarks identified by ® or ™ are registered trademarks or trademarks, respectively, of Avaya, Inc. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

How to obtain Avaya books on the Web

If you have internet access, you can view and download the latest version of Avaya documentation products. To view any book, you must have a copy of Adobe Acrobat Reader.

 **NOTE:**

If you don't have Acrobat Reader, you can get a free copy at <http://www.adobe.com>.

For example, to access an electronic version of this book:

1. Access the Avaya Web site at <http://www.avaya.com/support/>.
2. Click **Product Documentation**.
3. To find a specific book, type the document number (for example, **555-233-767** for this book) in the SEARCH SUPPORT text box, and then click GO.
4. In the resulting list, locate the latest version of the document, and then click the document title to view the latest version of the book.

How to order documentation

In addition to this book, other description, installation and test, maintenance, and administration books are available.

This document and any other Avaya documentation can be ordered directly from the Avaya Publications Center toll free at 1-800-457-1235 (voice) and 1-800-457-1764 (fax). Customers outside the United States should use +1-410-568-3680 (voice) and +1-410-891-0207 (fax).

How to comment on this book

Avaya welcomes your feedback. Contact us through:

- e-mail: document@avaya.com
- fax: 1-303-538-1741
- Contact your Avaya representative

Mention this document's name and number, *Overview for Avaya Communication Manager, 555-233-767*.

Your comments are of great value and help improve our documentation.

How to get help

If you suspect that you are being victimized by toll fraud and you need technical assistance or support in the United States and Canada, call the Technical Service Center's Toll Fraud Intervention Hotline at 1-800-643-2353.

If you need additional help, the following resources are available. You may need to purchase an extended service agreement to use some of these resources. See your Avaya representative for more information.

Go to the Avaya Web site at <http://www.avaya.com/support>:

- If you are within the United States, click the *Escalation Management* link. Then click the appropriate link for the type of support you need.
- If you are outside the United States, click the *Escalation Management* link. Then click *International Services*, which includes telephone numbers for the international Centers of Excellence. Or contact your local Avaya authorized dealer for any additional help and questions.

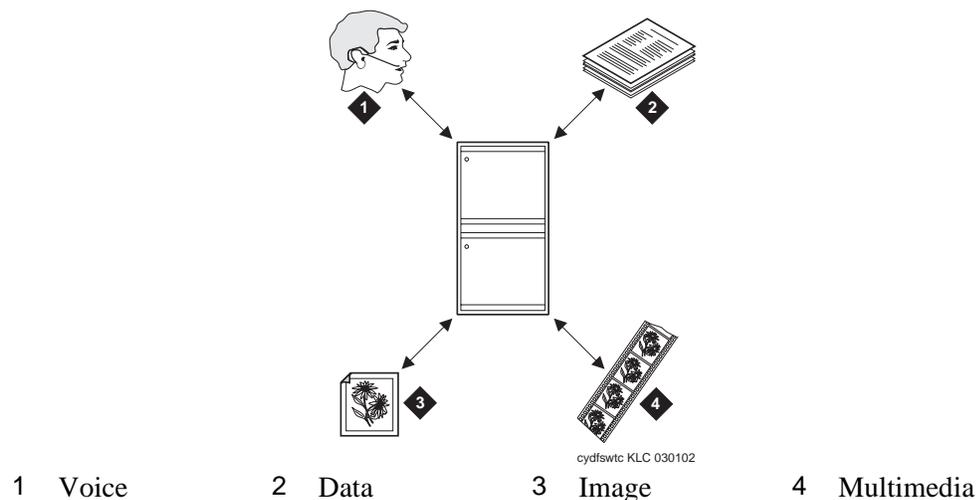
Overview of Avaya Communication Manager

1

Avaya Communication Manager organizes and routes voice, data, image and video transmissions. It can connect to private and public telephone networks, ethernet LANs, ATM networks, and the Internet.

Communication Manager seeks to solve business challenges by powering voice communications and integrating with value-added applications. Communication Manager is an open, scalable, highly reliable and secure telephony application. Communication Manager provides user and system management functionality, intelligent call routing, application integration and extensibility, and enterprise communications networking [Figure 1](#).

Figure 1. System running Avaya Communication Manager



Communication Manager basic offering and advanced offering

Communication Manager is available as a basic offering (called “Category B”) and as an advanced offering (called “Category A”). This book describes all of the advanced Communication Manager features (Category A). Some of these features are not available with the basic offering — which includes DEFINITY BCS and GuestWorks.

 **NOTE:**

For a list of features not supported in the basic offering, see your Avaya representative.

Optional software

In addition to the basic or advanced Communication Manager offerings, various optional packages can enhance the capabilities of the system. Some of the capabilities described in this document require optional software. See your account representative for more information.

Capacities

System capacities have been expanded for many products and features. However, the most up-to-date system capacity information is not listed in Communication Manager documentation.

Please see the *Avaya MultiVantage Solutions System Capacities Table*, 555-233-605, for the entire list of updated capacities.

To view the system capacity limits:

1. Go to <http://www.avaya.com/support>.
2. Click the **Product Documentation** link.
3. Type 555-233-605 in the **Search Support** text box, and then click GO.
4. Locate the latest version of the system capacities table document, and then click the title of the document to download the information.

Avaya Installation Wizard

The Avaya Installation Wizard is a tool to be used in installations (not upgrades) of Communication Manager in S8300/G700 system configurations. The Installation Wizard helps with reduced complexity, time-to-install, and the cost of installation. The Installation Wizard is only supported with the S8300 Media Server.



CAUTION:

The Avaya Installation Wizard and the web installation that is accessible from the Avaya maintenance Web pages should not be run at the same time. Make sure you complete one process before you start the other process.

The Installation Wizard delivers the following installation advantages:

- Intuitive user interface with on-line help
- Auto-discovery, where appropriate
- No assumption of external internet connectivity
- Ease of updating to newest software & firmware
- Ability to import customized name & number list
- Complete record of all settings
- Guided process from beginning to end

The Installation Wizard can guide installers through:

- License file and password file setup
- Media server & media gateway configuration
- Telephony, trunk, and endpoint configuration and installation
- Installation log file summary creation

The Installation Wizard for Communication Manager has these features:

- The Installation Wizard supports a stack of up to 10 G700 Media Gateways.
- Technicians are able to load updated media module firmware versions from their laptop as part of the Installation Wizard process.
- Installation of the BRI Media Module is supported.
- The Installation Wizard supports installation of a G700 Media Gateway with a Local Survivable Processor (LSP).

- Remote G700s without an Internal Call Controller (ICC) Media Module can be configured using the Installation Wizard by temporarily installing a spare ICC Media Module in the G700 Media Gateway until the end of the installation process.
- Provide an Electronic pre-Installation Worksheet (EIW) to automate the task of importing selected pre-installation data. This capability is focused on importing IP address information.
- A customization template to allow for the selective customization of defaulted translation data.
- Support configuration of the IA770 module.
- Support for Japan, United Kingdom, and France, including system and trunk level parameters. May be extended to Australia and other countries prior to the next release of Communication Manager.
- Support configuration of IP trunks.
- Support trunk diagnostics.
- Support IP address configuration of distributed G700 gateways through the Gateway Installation Wizard (GIW).

Updates to the Avaya Installation Wizard are available on the Web, and are not necessarily linked to any software release of Communication Manager. The latest version of Avaya Installation Wizard can be downloaded from <http://support.avaya.com/avayaiw>.

Gateway Installation Wizard (GIW)

The Gateway Installation Wizard (GIW) is a separate application that assists in installing and configuring G700 Media Gateways.

 **NOTE:**

The Gateway Installation Wizard is only supported with the S8300 Media Server.

- Laptop-based application for configuring G700 Media Gateways.
- Configures IP information for media gateway components in a stack.
- Connects to the serial console port.

Updates to GIW are available on the Web, and are not necessarily linked to any software release of Communication Manager. The latest version of GIW can be downloaded from <http://support.avaya.com/avayaiw>.

Avaya media servers and media gateways

The following hardware products are components that can run Communication Manager.

- [S8100 Media Server](#)
- [S8300 Media Server](#)
- [S8500 Media Server](#)
- [S8700 Media Server](#)
- [G350 Media Gateway](#)
- [G600 Media Gateway](#)
- [G650 Media Gateway](#)
- [G700 Media Gateway](#)

For more information about any of these media servers or media gateways, see the *Hardware Guide for Avaya Communication Manager*.

Also please see the capacities table for the entire list of updated capacities. The most up-to-date system capacity information is not listed in Communication Manager documentation. Instead, this information is available online. See [“Capacities” on page 32](#) for instructions how to locate the capacities table.

S8100 Media Server

The Avaya S8100 Media Server is targeted at small single-site, multi-site, and branch location customers. Within these locations, the S8100 focuses on those sites that have sophisticated application needs, such as voice mail and networking, in addition to the extensive functionality that Communication Manager provides.

The system uses a one, two, or three ten-slot CMC1 (wall mount) or G600 (19" rack mount) gateway cabinet. The S8100 supports up to 168 ports in the single cabinet configuration, or 618 ports in a two or three cabinet configuration.

The S8100 Media Server uses a Microsoft Windows 2000 server as its operating system. The Windows 2000 server provides a level of flexibility that allows multiple applications to co-reside on a single hardware platform.

The S8100 Media Server provides on-board Ethernet connectivity. This allows customers to administer the switch as a point on their LAN. Although LAN connectivity is available, other options, such as dial up connectivity and access through a local monitor, mouse and keyboard, are still provided to accommodate customers who do not have data networks that extend to remote locations.

S8300 Media Server

The Avaya S8300 Media Server is designed specifically for use with the G700 and G350 Media Gateways. The Avaya S8300 Media Server seamlessly delivers a business's voice, fax, and messaging capabilities over an IP network. This combination of media server and media gateway converges the power of the Communication Manager feature set with the power of distributed switching from the Avaya Cajun™ P330 line of network switches.

Several elements comprise an S8300 Media Server and G700/G350 Media Gateway combination:

- A G700 or G350 Media Gateway is always required. It can host an S8300 Media Server or various other media modules depending on the telephony needs at a particular location. Key components include the Cajun stack processor, Media Gateway Processor (MGP), and Voice over IP (VoIP) engine on the MGP board.
- The S8300 Media Server is a special type of media module. It supports Communication Manager that provides call-processing capabilities for the system. The S8300 Media Server can be configured as the primary call controller, or as a Local Survivable Processor (LSP) standby server for either an S8700 Media Server or for another S8300 Media Server in the configuration.

External readable CD ROM

The S8300 Media Server supports an external readable CD ROM drive through one of the two USB ports on the S8300. The CD ROM is used for system software upgrades.

S8500 Media Server

The Avaya S8500 Media Server is a rack mounted telephony server, running the Red Hat Linux 8.0 Operating System, and featuring Avaya Communication Manager. The S8500 is capable of supporting both Internet Protocol (IP) and traditional endpoints enabling new technology, and the ease of migration from legacy Avaya systems. The S8500 Media Server is a perfect solution for mid-sized customers, with growth of up to 3200 ports.

- Simplifies CSD portfolio for new sales into enterprise solutions
- Migration path for DEFINITY servers CSI, SI, and S8100
- Supports distributed environment in a smaller scale
- Going forward platform to support IP telephony
- Clear product road map for S8700

S8700 Media Server

The Avaya S8700 Media Server uses a standard microprocessor engine, a Linux platform, and an Intel-based processor on a commercial server. The S8700 Media Server uses high-speed connections to route voice, data, and video between analog and digital trunks, data lines that are connected to host computers, data-entry terminals, personal computers, and internet addresses.

Characteristics of the S8700 Media Server:

- 10/100 Ethernet ports to support IPSI network control links, services access, duplication, administration and alarming
- An IDE hard disk
- An IDE CD-ROM
- Support for global power ranging from 100V to 250V
- Storage media for the operating system, customer translations, and maintenance software
- Support for USB port connectivity for modem
- A 128 MB Flash Card for removable media
- Support for remote call out alarming from either server
- SNMP alarming

The S8700 Media Server must be mounted in an open 19-inch rack that is EIA-310-D compliant.

Linux 8.0 support

New purchases of S8300, S8500, and S8700 Media Servers operate with the Red Hat Linux 8.0 operating system. The S8500 and S8700 Media Servers are shipped with blank hard drives. The operating system and release 2.0 of Communication Manager are shipped separately on a CD and installed on the media servers on site. The S8300 Media Server is shipped with the operating system and release 2.0 of Communication Manager on the hard drives.

Upgrading Communication Manager to release 2.0 on an existing S8300 Media Server or an S8700 Media Server requires upgrading the operating system to Red Hat Linux 8.0. The upgrade process requires remastering (reformatting) the hard drives, then loading the new software and operating system from a CD-ROM.

G350 Media Gateway

The G350 Media Gateway is a low-cost, modular device targeting the small branch office of a large enterprise. The G350 Media Gateway provides customers with an affordable converged solution for the remote/branch offices between 15–40 stations. Additionally, branch office customers do not have to sacrifice telephony features because this solution extends the power of Communication Manager in a survivable package.

Some of the highlights of the G350 Media Gateway include:

- VoIP media gateway with both trunk and line functions. A Communication Manager server acts as the call controller for the G350 Media Gateway. An S8300 ICC processor can be used in a G350 Media Gateway.
- The G350 Media Gateway can be controlled by an external S8700 or S8500 Media Server, or an internal S8300 Media Server.
- WAN (data) connectivity and routing for both H.248 connections to a call controller and for general inter/intranet connectivity, and LAN Switching, providing power over ethernet for IP phones and wireless access points.

The G350 supports a new high density form factor, and provides a set of voice and data infrastructure services. The G350 Media Module utilizes the G700 Media Module form factor media modules (MM).

The following G700 form factor media modules have been developed:

- MM714 4FXS + 4FXO analog media module
- MM722 2-port BRI media module
- MM340 E1/T1 WAN routing media module
- MM342 V.35/X.21 WAN routing media module

The following boards conform to the new high density form factor.

- MM312 24-port DCP expansion module
- MM314 24-port PoE expansion module

G600 Media Gateway

The G600 Media Gateway is 19 inches wide, 13 inches high, and 21 inches deep, and contains 10 universal slots plus one power supply. The G600 Media Gateway is AC powered only, and there are no internal batteries.

The G600 has the following characteristics:

- A maximum of four G600 Media Gateways can be in each Port Network (PN) with the S8700 and S8500 media servers. The four G600 Media Gateways must be in one data rack due to TDM cable length.
- The S8100 Media Server can support up to three G600 Media Gateways.
- A PN consists of a control G600 Media Gateway that is designated A, and second, third, and fourth optional G600 Media Gateways that are designated as B, C, and D, respectively.
- The dimensions of the G600 Media Gateway.
- Circuit packs are inserted and removed from the front of the cabinet. Cabinet I/O is through the back and through a front cable pass-through slot.
- An RJ45 patch panel is recommended for cross-connecting to a LAN or a wall field.

G650 Media Gateway

The G650 Media Gateway is an enhanced rack mount cabinet that provides customers with an expandable gateway for traditional and IP configurations, a data form factor, and scalability.

The G650 also includes:

- Support for up to 14 universal TN- circuit pack slots in a common carrier
- A new 655A power supply design that:
 - operates from either AC or DC input power
 - can be used in either a stand alone or redundant configuration in a single carrier
 - provides load sharing when used in the redundant mode
- Provides enhanced environmental status and control, including voltage, current, temperature, and fan speed

The redundant power supplies, coupled with the enhanced environmental reporting, improve the reliability, availability, and maintainability of the carrier over the existing G600 design.

TN2312BP IPSI functionality

The G650 Media Gateway includes an enhanced Internet Protocol Server Interface (IPSI), known as the TN2312BP IPSI circuit pack. The TN2312BP IPSI functionality consists of:

- the existing IPSI (TN2312AP circuit pack) functions
- G650 cabinet maintenance
- Customer Provided Alarm Device (CPAD) control
- IPSI duplication for IP-connected systems

Upgrades from the TN2312AP IPSI to the TN2312BP IPSI require a circuit pack change.

TN2312BP IPSI support of G650 cabinet maintenance includes:

- power/fan temperature monitoring
- an enhanced bus interface from the TN2312BP IPSI to the 655A power supplies in the G650 carrier
- a lead from the TN2312BP IPSI to the 655A power supply that provides environmental monitoring of the power supply and fan assembly

G700 Media Gateway

The G700 Media Gateway fits in an EIA-310-D standard 19-inch data rack, or it can sit on a desk top. The G700 uses media modules instead of TN-circuit packs. The G700 contains four slots for media modules. If a S8300 Media Server is used internally, it must go into the V1 media module slot.

The G700 has an Intel i960 controller that hosts the base switch control and management software, and supports 15 ports of tone detection. Some of the other highlights of the G700 are:

- Standards-based 10/100 Ethernet Interface connection types
- Internal global AC power supply that provides low-voltage DC power to the fans, motherboard, and media modules
- Four internal fans that provide cooling for the internal components
- An LED board that indicates system-level status
- A serial port for command-line access
- A VoIP engine that supports up to 64 G.711 single-channel calls
- An 8-port layer-2 switch

MultiTech gateway support

Communication Manager supports a voice over IP (VoIP) gateway from MultiTech, a third-party vendor. Any system running Communication Manager can connect and run a MultiTech gateway.

With a 2-port, 4-port, or 8-port MultiTech gateway, Communication Manager offers a cost-effective and survivable VoIP gateway solution within a Communication Manager environment for a client's branch or remote office with fewer than ten stations.

Connecting a MultiTech gateway to your system is just like connecting any H.323 generic IP endpoint -- similar to connecting an IP telephone. Once connected, a customer could then connect analog stations and trunks to the MultiTech gateway.

Application programming interface (API)

2

An application programming interface (API) allows numerous software applications to work with Avaya Communication Manager.

Adjunct switch application interface (ASAI)

See [“Adjunct Switch Application Interface \(ASAI\)” on page 56.](#)

Communication Manager API

Communication Manager API provides a connector to Communication Manager that allows clients to develop applications that provide first party call control. Applications can register as IP extensions on Communication Manager and then monitor and control those extensions.

Communication Manager API consists of connector server software and a connector client API library. The connector server software runs on a hardware server that is independent from Communication Manager. That is, Communication Manager API does not run co-resident with Communication Manager.

DAPI

DEFINITY application programming interface (DAPI) is an object-oriented application programming interface (API) for accessing control and data paths within Communication Manager. It enables applications to easily monitor events, inject stimuli, and access switch data using a high-speed LAN connection.

DAPI allows development of enhanced debugging tools for services engineers, field support, and software developers. DAPI is for internal use only, meaning that any applications created using DAPI are limited for use by Avaya personnel only.

JTAPI

Java telephony application programming interface (JTAPI) is an open API supported by Avaya computer telephony that enables integration to Communication Manager ASAI. It is an object-oriented programming interfaces favored for the development of multimedia solutions. JTAPI applications are supported on any clients that supports a JAVA virtual machine (this includes Windows, UnixWare, and Solaris platforms), or a Java-compatible Web browser.

TAPI

Telephony Application Programming Interface (TAPI).

TSAPI

Telephony Services Application Programming Interface (TSAPI) is an open API supported by Avaya computer telephony that allows integration to Communication Manager ASAI. TSAPI interface supports a wide breadth of application hardware and operating systems, including Windows 95, Windows 98, Windows NT, and UnixWare for clients.

Attendant features

3

Avaya Communication Manager contains many exciting features that provide easy ways to communicate through your telephone system's attendant (operator). In addition, attendants can connect to their console (switchboard) from other telephones in your system, thereby expanding the attendant capabilities.

Accessing the attendant

Dial access to attendant

The dial access to attendant feature allows you to reach an attendant by dialing an access code. The attendant can then extend the call to a trunk or to another telephone.

Individual attendant access

Individual attendant access allows you to call a specific attendant console. Each attendant console can be assigned an individual extension number.

Recall

This feature allows users to recall the attendant when they are on a two-party call or on an attendant conference call held on the console.

- Single-line users press the recall button or flash the switchhook to recall the attendant.
- Multi-appearance users press the conference or transfer button to recall the attendant and remain on the connection when either button is used.

Attendant backup

The attendant backup feature allows you to access most attendant console features from one or more specially-administered backup telephones. This allows you to answer calls more promptly, thus providing better service to your guests and prospective clients.

When the attendant console is busy, you can answer overflow calls from the backup telephones by pressing a button or dialing a feature access code. You can then process the calls as if you are at the attendant console. The recommended backup telephones are the Avaya models 6408, 6416, or 6424.

Attendant room status

Communication Manager allows an attendant to see whether a room is vacant or occupied, and what the housekeeping status of each room is. This feature is available only when you have enhanced hospitality enabled for your system (see [“Hospitality” on page 97](#)).

This feature combines the property management capabilities of housekeeping status and check-in/check-out, but does not require that you have a property management system (PMS).

Attendant functions using Distributed Communications System (DCS) protocol

Control of trunk group access

Control of trunk group access allows an attendant at any node in the Distributed Communications System (DCS) to take control of any outgoing trunk group at an adjacent node. This is helpful when an attendant wants to prevent telephone users from calling out on a specific trunk group for any number of reasons, such as reserving a trunk group for incoming calls or for a very important outgoing call.

Direct trunk group selection

Direct trunk group selection allows the attendant direct access to an idle outgoing trunk in a local or remote trunk group by pressing the button assigned to that trunk group. This feature eliminates the need for the attendant to memorize, or look up, and dial the trunk access codes associated with frequently used trunk groups. Direct trunk group selection is intended to expedite the handling of an outgoing call by the attendant.

Inter-PBX attendant calls

Inter-PBX attendant calls allows attendants for multiple branches to be concentrated at a main location. Incoming trunk calls to the branch, as well as attendant-seeking voice-terminal calls, route over tie trunks to the main location.

Call handling

Attendant lockout — privacy

This feature prevents an attendant from re-entering a multiple-party connection held on the console unless recalled by a telephone user. This feature is administered on a system-wide basis. It is either activated or not activated.

Attendant split swap

The attendant split swap feature allows the attendant to alternate between active and split calls. This operation may be useful if the attendant needs to transfer a call but first must talk independently with each party before completing the transfer.

Attendant vectoring

Attendant vectoring provides a highly flexible approach for managing incoming calls to an attendant. For example, with current night service operation, calls redirected from the attendant console to a night station can ring only at that station and will not follow any coverage path.

With attendant vectoring, night service calls will follow the coverage path of the night station. The coverage path could go to another station and eventually to a voice mail system. The caller can then leave a message that can be retrieved and acted upon.

Automated attendant

Automated attendant allows the calling party to enter the number of any extension on the system. The call is then routed to the extension. This allows you to reduce cost by reducing the need for live attendants.

Backup alerting

The backup alerting feature notifies backup attendants that the primary attendant cannot pick up a call. It provides both audible and visual alerting to backup stations when the attendant queue reaches its queue warning level. When the queue drops below the queue warning level, alerting stops.

Audible alerting also occurs when the attendant console is in night mode, regardless of the attendant queue size.

Call waiting

Call waiting allows an attendant to let a single-line telephone user who is on the phone know that a call is waiting. The attendant is then free to answer other calls. The attendant hears a call waiting ringback tone and the busy telephone user hears a call waiting tone. This tone is heard only by the called telephone user.

Calling of inward restricted stations

A telephone with a class of restriction (COR) that is inward restricted cannot receive public network, attendant-originated, or attendant-extended calls. This feature allows you to override this restriction.

Conference

The conference feature allows an attendant to set up a conference call for as many as six conferees, including the attendant. Conferences from inside and outside the system can be added to the conference call.

Intrusion (call offer)

Allows an attendant to enter an existing call to inform the person being called about a message or another call.

Listed directory number

Allows outside callers to access your attendant group in two ways, depending on the type of trunk used for the incoming call. You can allow attendant group access through incoming direct inward dial trunks, or you can allow attendant group access through incoming central office and foreign exchange trunks.

Override of diversion features

The override of diversion feature allows an attendant to bypass diversion features such as send all calls and call coverage by putting a call through to an extension even when these diversion features are on. This feature, together with attendant intrusion, can be used to get an emergency or urgent call through to a telephone user.

Priority queue

Priority queue places incoming calls to the attendant in an orderly queue when these calls cannot go immediately to the attendant. This feature allows you to define twelve different categories of incoming attendant calls, including emergency calls, which are given the highest priority.

Release loop operation

Release loop operation allows the attendant to hold a call at the console if the call cannot immediately go through to the person being called. A timed reminder begins once the call is on hold. If the call is not answered within the allotted time, the call returns to the queue for the attendant. Timed reminders attempt to return the call to the attendant who previously handled it. Only when the original attendant is unavailable are calls returned to the queue.

Selective conference mute

See [“Selective conference mute” on page 81](#).

Serial calling

The serial calling feature enables an attendant to transfer trunk calls that return to the same attendant after the called party hangs up. The returned call can then transfer to another station within the switch. This feature is useful if trunks are scarce and direct inward dialing services are unavailable. An outside caller may have to redial often to get through because trunks are so busy. Once callers get through to an attendant they can use the same line into the switch for multiple calls. The attendant's display shows if an incoming call is a serial call.

Timed reminder and attendant timers

Attendant timers automatically alert the attendant after an administered time interval for the following types of calls:

- Extended calls to be answered or waiting to be connected to a busy single-line telephone
- One-party calls placed on hold on the console
- Transferred calls that have not been answered after transfer

The timed reminder feature informs the attendant that a call requires additional attention. After the attendant reconnects to the call, the user can either choose to try another extension number, hang up, or continue to wait. Communication Manager supports a variety of administrable attendant timers for use in a variety of situations.

Centralized Attendant Service (CAS)

Centralized Attendant Service (CAS) enables attendant services in a private network to be concentrated at a central location. Each branch in a centralized attendant service has its own listed directory number or other type of access from the public network. Incoming calls to the branch, as well as calls made by users directly to the attendants, are routed to the centralized attendants over release link trunks.

Display

The display feature shows call-related information that helps the attendant to operate the console. This feature also shows personal service and message information. Information is shown on the alphanumeric display on the attendant console. Attendants may select one of several available display message languages: English, French, Italian, or Spanish. In addition, your company may define one additional language for use by users and attendants on their display.

Making calls

Auto-manual splitting

Auto-manual splitting allows an attendant to announce a call or consult privately with the called party without being heard by the calling party on the call. It splits the calling party away so the attendant can confidentially determine if the called party can accept the call.

Auto start and don't split

The auto start feature allows the attendant to make a telephone call without pushing the start button first. If the attendant is on an active call and presses digits on the keypad, the system automatically splits the call and begins dialing the second call.

The don't split feature deactivates the auto start feature and allows the sending of touch tones over the line for the purposes of such things as picking up messages.

Monitoring calls

Attendant direct trunk group selection

With this feature, the attendant directs access to an idle outgoing trunk by pressing the button assigned to the trunk group. This feature eliminates the need for the attendant to memorize, or look up, and dial the trunk access codes associated with frequently used trunk groups. Pressing a labelled button selects an idle trunk in the desired group.

Crisis alerts to an attendant console

Crisis alert uses both audible and visual alerting to notify attendant consoles when an emergency call is made. Audible alerting sounds like an ambulance siren. Visual alerting flashes the CRSS-ALRT button lamp and the display of the caller's name and extension (or room). Crisis alert's display of the origin of the emergency call enables the attendant or other user to direct emergency service response to the caller. Though often used in the hospitality industry, it can be set up to work with any standard attendant console.

When crisis alerting is active, the console is placed in position-busy mode so that other incoming calls can not interfere with the emergency call notification. The console can still originate calls to allow notification of other personnel. Once a crisis alert call has arrived at a console, the console user must press the position-busy button to unbusy the console, and press the crisis-alert button to deactivate audible and visual alerting.

If an emergency call is made while another crisis alert is still active, the incoming call will be placed in the queue. If the system is administered so that all users must respond, then every user must respond to every call, in which case the calls are not necessarily queued in the order in which they were made. If the system is administered so that only one user must respond, the first crisis alert remains active at the phone where it was acknowledged. Subsequent calls are queued to the next available station in the order in which they were made.

Direct extension selection with busy lamp field

This feature allows the attendant to keep track of extension status — whether the extension is idle or busy — and to place or extend calls to extension numbers without having to dial the extension number. The attendant can use this feature in two ways:

- using standard direct extension selection access
- using enhanced direct extension selection access

Trunk group access

Trunk group access allows an attendant to control trunk groups and prevents telephone users from directly accessing a controlled trunk group. This allows the attendant to monitor the use of these trunk groups. By watching the lamps associated with the trunk groups, the attendant can determine if the number of busy trunks in a specific trunk group has reached a preset warning level and if all trunks in a specific trunk group are busy. The attendant can then handle other calls to these trunk groups accordingly.

Trunk group busy/warning indicators to attendant

This feature provides the attendant with a visual indication that the number of busy trunks in a group has reached an administered level. A visual indication is also provided when all trunks in a group are busy. This feature is particularly helpful to show the attendant that the attendant control of trunk group access feature needs to be invoked.

Trunk identification by attendant

Trunk identification allows an attendant or display-equipped telephone user to identify a specific trunk being used on a call. This capability is provided by assigning a trunk ID button to the attendant console or telephone. This feature is particularly helpful for identifying a faulty trunk. That trunk can then be removed from service and the problem quickly corrected.

Visually Impaired Attendant Service (VIAS)

Visually Impaired Attendant Service (VIAS) provides voice feedback to a visually impaired attendant. Each voice phrase is a sequence of one or more single-voiced messages. This feature defines six attendant buttons to aid visually impaired attendants:

- Visually impaired service activation/deactivation button: activates or deactivates the feature. All ringers previously disabled (for example, recall and incoming calls) become reenabled.
- Console status button: voices whether the console is in position available or position busy state, whether the console is a night console, what the status of the attendant queue is, and what the status of system alarms is.
- Display status button: voices what is shown on the console display. VIAS support is not available for all display features (for example, class of restriction information, personal names, and some call purposes).
- Last operation button: voices the last operation performed.
- Last voiced message button: repeats the last voiced message.
- Direct trunk group selection status button: voices the status of an attendant-monitored trunk group.

The visually impaired attendant may use the Inspect mode to locate each button and determine the feature assigned to each without actually executing the feature.

The Avaya call center provides a fully integrated telecommunications platform that supports a powerful assortment of features, capabilities, and applications designed to meet all of your customers' call center needs.

Computer Telephony Integration (CTI)

Computer Telephony Integration (CTI) enables Avaya Communication Manager features to be controlled by external applications, and allows integration of customer databases of information with call control features.

Avaya Computer Telephony (formally named CentreVu™ Computer Telephony) is server software that integrates the premium call control features of Communication Manager with customer information in customer's databases. It is a local area network (LAN)-based CTI solution consisting of server software that runs in a client/server configuration. Avaya Computer Telephony delivers the CTI architecture and platform that supports contact center application requirements, along with emerging applications programming interfaces (APIs).

Adjunct Switch Application Interface (ASAI)

Adjunct Switch Application Interface (ASAI) allows adjunct applications to access a collection of Communication Manager features and services. Integration with adjuncts occurs through APIs. ASAI is part of Avaya computer telephony.

ASAI links Communication Manager and adjunct applications. The interface allows adjunct applications to access Communication Manager features and supply routing information to the system.

ASAI improves ACD agents' call handling efficiency by allowing an adjunct to monitor, initiate, control, and terminate calls on the switch. ASAI may be used for Inbound Call Management (ICM), Outbound Call Management (OCM), and office automation/messaging applications.

ASAI uses two transport types:

- ISDN-BRI transport (ASAI-BRI)
- LAN gateway transmission control protocol/internet protocol transport (LAN gateway TCP/IP).

ASAI messages and procedures are based on the ITU-T Q.932 international standard for supplementary services.

Adjunct route support for network call redirection

This feature provides the capability to invoke Network Call Redirection (NCR) through the route request response to an adjunct route vector step. This allows a CTI application to directly utilize NCR for redirecting an incoming call in the PSTN through the ASAI adjunct routing application.

The redirection request, along with the PSTN redirected to a telephone number, is included in the route select message from the adjunct. The redirect request invokes whatever form of network redirection that is assigned to the trunk group for the incoming call in the same manner as a vector invoked NCR. Information forwarding to the redirected destination is supported in the same manner as a vector invoked NCR.

This capability functions with either the network transfer type (where the switch sets up the 2nd leg of a call), or the network deflection type (where the PSTN sets up the 2nd leg of a call) of NCR protocols.

Co-resident DEFINITY LAN Gateway

In simplest terms, the DEFINITY Local Area Network (LAN) Gateway, or DLG, is an application that enables communications between TCP/IP clients and Communication Manager call processing. In more technical terms, the DLG application is software that both routes internetwork messages from one protocol to another (ISDN to TCP/IP) and bridges all ASAI message traffic by way of a TCP/IP tunnel protocol.

In previous configurations, a DEFINITY LAN gateway (DLG) was connected externally on a separate TN801 MAPD circuit pack. The DLG application is packaged internally where it co-resides with the Communication Manager. The internally packaged DLG is referred to as the co-resident DLG.

Co-resident DLG is only available with the S8300 Media Server.

Co-resident DLG provides the functionality of the Adjunct/Switch Application Interface (ASAI) using an ethernet transport instead of a Basic Rate Interface (BRI) transport. In the S8300 Media Server, connectivity is provided through the processor's ethernet.

For more information on co-resident DLG and the G700 Media Gateway, see chapters "DEFINITY LAN Gateway and ASAI-Ethernet," and "Installation and Test for CallVisor ASAI," in the *Avaya MultiVantage™ Software CallVisor ASAI Technical Reference*, 555-230-220.

Also see the following documents:

- *DEFINITY Enterprise Communications Server CallVisor ASAI Applications Over MAPD*, 555-230-136
- *Installation for Adjuncts and Peripherals for Avaya Communication Manager*, 555-233-116.

Direct Agent Announcement (DAA)

Direct Agent Announcement (DAA) enhances direct agent calling capabilities for Adjunct Switch Application Interface (ASAI) and Expert Agent Selection (EAS). It plays an announcement to direct agent callers waiting in a queue.

Flexible billing

The flexible billing feature allows Communication Manager or an adjunct to communicate with the public network using ISDN PRI messages to change the billing rate for an incoming 900-type call. Rate-change requests to specify a new billing rate can be made anytime after a call is answered and before it disconnects.

Flexible billing is available in the U.S. for use with AT&T MultiQuest 900 Vari-A-Bill service. Flexible billing requires an adjunct switch application interface and other application software.

Pending work mode change

This feature allows ASAI applications to change the current work mode of an agent while that agent is busy on a call. The change is a pending change that will take effect as soon as all the current calls are cleared.

Trunk group identification

Trunk group identification provides ASAI applications with the capability to obtain trunk group information even when the Calling Party Number (CPN) is known. ASAI will provide the trunk group information in the event reports for both inbound and outbound calls. If the ANI is known, the event reports will contain the trunk group information and the CPN.

User-to-User Information (UUI) propagation during manual transfer/conference operations

This feature enables UUI, specifically used by ASAI, to be propagated to the new call during a manual transfer or conference operation. Previously, ASAI UUI could not be sent in a setup message when the call was transferred to another system, so the ASAI UUI was never passed to an application monitoring calls on the system receiving the transfer.

This feature only applies to manual transfer and conference operations. If the transfer or conference operation is controlled by a software application (for example, controlling calls or agents over an ASAI link), the application can insert the desired ASAI UUI into the new call.

VDN override for ASAI messages

This feature provides a VDN option to override the called number in certain ASAI messages for ISDN calls. This applies to CTI applications that require the active VDN extension instead of the called number. This is a field on page 2 of the VDN Screen - "VDN Override for ISDN Trunk ASAI Messages (default is n(o)).

For calls to VDNs with the option set to y(es), the called number provided will correspond to the active VDN for call instead of the original called number provided in the incoming ISDN SETUP message. This applies to the ASAI call-offered, alerting, queued and connect event messages and the adjunct route-request message.

Automatic Call Distribution (ACD)

Automatic Call Distribution (ACD) is the basic building block for call center applications. ACD offers you a method for distributing incoming calls efficiently and equitably among available agents. With ACD, incoming calls can be directed to the first idle or most idle agent within a group of agents.

Agents in an ACD environment are assigned to a hunt group, a group of agents handling the same types of calls. A hunt group is also known as a split or skill with Expert Agent Selection (EAS).

A hunt group is especially useful when you expect a high number of calls to a particular phone number. A hunt group might consist of people trained to handle calls on specific topics. For example, the group might be:

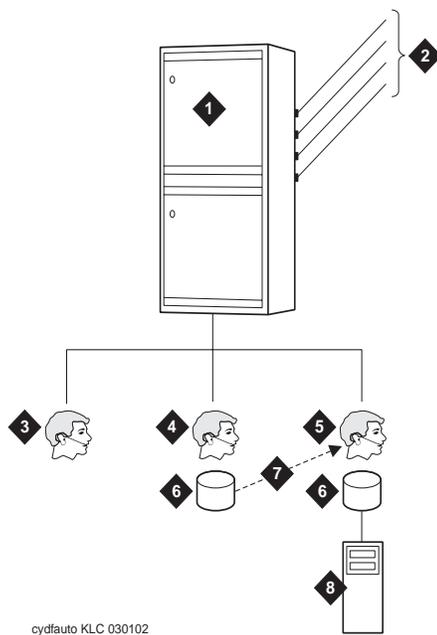
- A benefits department within your company
- A service department for products you sell
- A travel reservations service
- A pool of attendants

In addition, a hunt group might consist of a group of shared telecommunications facilities. For example, the group might be:

- A modem pool
- A group of data-line circuit ports
- A group of data modules

In the [Figure 2](#) example, hunt group “A” receives calls only when agents are available since it has no queue. Calls to hunt group “B” can be queued while agents are unavailable, and redirected to hunt group “C” if not answered within an administrable time. Calls to hunt group “C” are redirected to voice mail if not answered within an administrable time.

Figure 2. A basic example of automatic call distribution



- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1 System running Avaya Communication Manager | 5 Hunt group C: general information |
| 2 Incoming lines | 6 Queues |
| 3 Hunt group A: business travel | 7 Call coverage to hunt group C |
| 4 Hunt group B: personal travel | 8 Voice mail |

Abandoned call search

Abandoned call search allows a central office that does not provide timely disconnect supervision to identify abandoned calls. An abandoned call is one in which the calling party hangs up before the call is answered. Abandoned call search is suitable only for older central offices that do not provide timely disconnect supervision.

Adjunct routing

Adjunct routing is a vector step that, when executed, sends a route request over the specified link to the connected adjunct asking where to route the call being processed. The adjunct is then to respond with a route-select message specifying the destination either internal or outside number where the call is to be routed. Adjunct routing is used in conjunction with ASAI.

Auto-Available Split (AAS)

Auto-Available Split (AAS) allows members of an Automatic Call Distribution (ACD) split to be continuously in auto-in work mode. An agent in auto-in work mode becomes available for another ACD call immediately after disconnecting from an ACD call. You can use AAS to bring ACD-split members back into auto-in work mode after a system restart.

Although not restricted to such, this feature is intended to be used for splits containing only recorders or voice-response units.

Local feedback for queued ACD calls

A cost saving trend used by many call centers is the movement of agent seats from locations in the US and EU to offshore locations. One detriment to achieving these savings is the increase in trunk costs by redirecting calls to these offshore locations.

When a call is rerouted to an alternate switch, it becomes the responsibility of the destination switch to provide audible feedback to the caller while that call remains in queue at the destination switch waiting for an available agent. Typically, such audible feedback takes the form of music interspersed with recorded announcements.

When the trunks between the sending and receiving switches are IP trunks, bandwidth is utilized when the music and recorded announcement packets are sent from the destination switch to the caller. Because of the continuous nature of music, the bandwidth required to provide this audible feedback to callers in queue is generally greater than that required to support a conversation between a caller and an agent.

Communication Manager allows vector processing to continue at the local sending switch, even after a call has been routed to a queue on an offshore destination switch. Vector processing at the sending switch can then continue to provide audible feedback to the caller while the call is in queue at the destination switch. No packets need be sent over the IP trunk during the queuing phase of the call.

Queue status indicators

Communication Manager allows you to assign queue status indicators for ACD calls based on the number of calls queued and the time in queue. To help monitor queue activity, you can assign these indications to lamps on agent, supervisor, or attendant terminals, or on consoles.

In addition, you can define auxiliary queue warning lamps to track queue status. On display telephones, you can display the number of calls queued and the time in queue of a split's oldest call.

Avaya Basic Call Management System (BCMS)

The Avaya Basic Call Management System (BCMS) helps you fine tune your call center operation by providing reports with the data necessary to measure your call center agents' performances.

The BCMS feature offers call management control and reporting at a low cost for call centers of up to 2000 agents. BCMS collects and processes ACD call data (up to seven days) within the system; an adjunct processor is not required to produce call management reports.

The following are the types of reports that can be generated:

- Real-time reports, such as:
 - Agent status
 - System status
 - Vector directory number status
- Historical reports, such as:
 - Agent
 - Agent summary
 - Split
 - Split summary
 - Trunk group
 - Vector directory number

Avaya Business Advocate

Avaya Business Advocate is the collection of features that provide flexibility in the way a call is selected for an agent in a call surplus situation, and in the way an agent is selected for a call. Instead of the traditional “first in, first out” approach, the caller’s needs, potential business value, and their desire to wait are calculated, and the system then decides what agents should be matched to the callers.

Advocate-related enhancements

Auto reserve agents

Auto reserve agents allows the system to use the percent allocation distribution feature for agent skills.

Call selection override per skill

Call selection override is determined by skill. Call center supervisors can override the normal call handling activity either on particular skills only, or for the entire call center.

Dynamic percentage adjustment

The dynamic percentage adjustment feature allows the system to compare actual levels of service with service targets. The system can then adjust the service target so that the overall use of the skill is more efficient.

Dynamic queue position

Dynamic queue position allows the system to put calls from multiple vector directory numbers (VDNs) into a skill queue. The calculation is based on the ratio of ASA for the VDNs being equal to the ratio of service objectives for the VDNs. This feature ensures balanced call handling across VDNs.

Dynamic threshold adjustment

Dynamic threshold adjustment allows the system to compare actual levels of service with service targets, and to adjust overload thresholds. This feature makes the use of overload agents more efficient.

Logged-in advocate agent counting

The logged-in advocate agent counting feature counts agents toward the advocate agent limit if a service objective, percent allocation, or a reserved skill is assigned to the agent’s login ID, or if one of the agent’s skills is assigned least occupied agent or service level supervisor.

Percent allocation distribution

Percent allocation distribution allows the system to distribute calls to auto reserve agents by comparing a reserve agent's work time in a skill with the target allocation for that skill.

Reserve agent time in queue activation

This feature activates a reserve agent either if a skill's expected wait time (EWT) exceeds a pre-determined threshold, or if the call's time in the queue exceeds the administered service level supervisor threshold. Reserve agents are then dropped off a skill only when both of the following conditions are met:

- The EWT for the skill drops below both administered thresholds.
- The head call's time in queue no longer exceeds the service level supervisor threshold.

Avaya Call Management System (CMS)

The Avaya Call Management System (CMS) collects call traffic data, formats management reports, and provides an administration interface for Automatic Call Distribution (ACD). It helps you manage the people, traffic load, and equipment in an ACD environment by answering such questions as:

- How many calls are we handling?
- How many callers abandon their calls before talking with an agent?
- Are all agents handling a fair share of the calling load?
- Are our lines busy often enough to warrant adding additional ones?
- How has traffic changed in a given ACD hunt group over the past year?

Avaya virtual routing

Avaya virtual routing (formerly known as Look-Ahead Interflow or LAI) balances the load of ACD calls across multiple locations. Virtual routing helps customers balance call loads among their locations by analyzing demand and directing each call to the location best able to handle it — for example, based on call volume, waiting time in queue, or the time of day.

With Avaya virtual routing, you can optionally route a call to a backup location based on your system's ability to handle the call within parameters defined in a vector. In turn, the backup system can accept or deny the call also based on defined parameters.

Avaya virtual routing allows interflowing of only the call(s) at or near the head of the queue to provide First In/First Out (FIFO) call distribution and significantly reduce call and trunk processing for Avaya virtual routing.

Enhanced information forwarding

Enhanced information forwarding allows call center related information to be passed transparently over some public networks and non-QSIG or QSIG private networks using codeset 0 shared user-to-user information (UUI) (for non-QSIG) or QSIG manufacturer-specific information (MSI). For more information on UUI, see [“User-to-user information \(UUI\) over the public network” on page 76](#).

Call center release control

Call center release control determines which features are “active” on your switch. The call center release control feature controls whether certain call center software features are available to you.

Call prompting

Call prompting allows the system to collect information from the calling party and direct the calls using call vectoring.

The caller is verbally prompted by the system and enters information in response to the prompts. This information is then used to redirect the call or handle the call in some other way (taking a message, for example). This feature is mostly used to enhance the efficient handling of calls in the automatic call distribution application.

Data collection

Data collection allows the calling party to enter data that can then be used by a host computer application to assist in call handling. For example, this data may be the calling party’s account number, which could then be used to support an inquiry/response application.

Data In/Voice Answer (DIVA)

Data In/Voice Answer (DIVA) allows the calling party to hear selected announcements based on the digits that he or she enters. This may be used for applications such as an audio bulletin board.

Call vectoring

Call vectoring is a versatile method of routing incoming calls that can be combined with automatic call distribution for maximum benefit and call center efficiency. A call vector is a series of call processing steps (such as providing ringing tones, busy tones, music, announcements, and queuing the call to an ACD hunt group) that define how calls are handled and routed. The steps, called vector commands, determine the type of processing that specific calls will receive.

Vector commands may direct calls to on-premises or off-premises destinations, to any skill or hunt group, or to a specific call treatment such as an announcement, forced disconnect, forced busy, or music.

With combinations of different vector commands, incoming callers can be treated differently depending on the time or day of the call, the expected wait time (EWT), the importance of the call, or other criteria. Each vector can have up to 32 commands. Communication Manager also allows vectors to be linked through the “goto vector” command.

Advanced vector routing

Advanced vector routing is a collection of features that enhance Communication Manager vector routing capabilities.

Average Speed of Answer (ASA) routing

Average Speed of Answer (ASA) routing is an enhancement to call vectoring that provides a flexible method for routing calls or queuing calls based on their average speed of answer for a VDN or a split/skill.

Best service routing (BSR)

Best service routing (BSR) distributes the call to the best local or remote split/skill among the resources to be considered, based on expected wait time (EWT) or available agent characteristics.

Best service routing (BSR) polling over IP without B-channel

Best service routing (BSR) polling over IP without B-channel provides the ability to do BSR polling between multiple sites over H.323 IP trunks without requiring an ISDN PRI B-channel. This also eliminates the associated IP media processor hardware.

QSIG temporary signaling connections are used by the BSR polling software to eliminate the need for the IP media processor board, thereby making BSR an even more cost effective multi-site solution.

Expected Wait Time (EWT) routing

The Expected Wait Time (EWT) feature makes call center routing decisions based on waiting time for calls in queue, using a patented algorithm that continuously estimates call waiting times. Announcements of the wait time customers can expect before their call is answered can make time in queue more tolerable.

Call center messaging

Call center messaging gives the calling party the option of leaving a message or waiting in queue for an agent. This may be used for an online order entry system or to further automate an incoming call center operation.

Holiday vectoring

With holiday vectoring, a flexible approach for managing incoming calls on special dates is available. Holiday vectoring allows for branching and routing of calls based on information about special schedules. The special schedules are recorded in tables, each of which can hold up to 15 special dates or ranges of dates. Holiday vectoring makes it possible for up to 10 tables to be treated differently in vector processing.

Vector Directory Number (VDN)

Calls access Communication Manager vectors using Vector Directory Numbers (VDN). A VDN is a “soft” extension number that is not assigned to a physical equipment location. A VDN has several properties that are administered by the system manager.

A VDN can be accessed in almost any way that an extension can be accessed. When answering a call, the answering agent sees the information (such as the name) associated with the VDN on their display, and can respond to the call with knowledge of the dialed number. This operation provides dialed number identification service (DNIS), allowing the agent to identify the purpose of the incoming call.

Class of Restriction (COR) for VDN

Class of Restriction (COR) is checked for transfer to the VDN. It can also be used to block the AUX trunk announcement from some agents. Observing can also be set to allow or restrict to that VDN.

Display VDN for route-to DAC

Display VDN for route-to DAC provides a VDN option to have the display to the answering agent show the “caller to VDN” format. The option for the “caller to VDN” display is required for ACD applications where a call needs to be routed to a specific agent, and have the call go to coverage if the agent doesn't answer or is logged out.

VDN in a coverage path

VDN in a coverage path enhances call coverage and call vectoring to allow you to assign vector directory numbers as the last point in coverage paths. Calls that go to coverage can be processed by vectoring/prompting to extend call coverage treatments.

VDN of origin announcement

VDN of origin announcement provides agents with a short message about a caller's city of origin or requested service based on the VDN used to process the call. VOA messages help agents respond appropriately to callers.

For example, if you have two 800 numbers, one for placing orders and one for technical support, you can administer two VDNs to route calls to the same set of agents. When an incoming call is routed to a VDN with a VOA assigned (for example, “new order” or “tech help”), the VDN routes the call to a vector that can place the call in an agent queue. When an agent answers the call, he or she hears the VOA message and can respond appropriately to the caller's request.

This feature is particularly useful for visually impaired agents or agents that don't have display sets.

VDN return destination

VDN return destination is an optional feature that re-routes a call that has been processed through a vector, to the administered return destination. This step occurs once all parties, except the originator, have dropped. The return destination must be a VDN extension.

Call Work Codes (CWC)

Call Work Codes (CWC) allows ACD agents to enter digits for an ACD call to record the occurrence of a customer-defined event, such as a social security numbers or phone numbers. The agent enters the call work code by operating the CWC feature button and using the dial pad during an ACD (inbound) call without interrupting the conversation, or in the After Call Work (ACW) mode following the call. The digits are displayed on a display-equipped telephone while being entered.

Circular station hunt group

This hunt group type is an alternative to the “ddc” or “hot-seat” algorithm in a hunt group. Communication Manager keeps track of the last extension in the hunt group that received a call. When another incoming call arrives, it is sent to the next idle extension, bypassing the extension that had received the previous call.

The first extension in the hunt group will no longer be the busiest telephone while the others in the group are sitting idle.

CMS measurement of ATM

The Call Management System (CMS) measurement of ATM feature provides the capability to externally measure ATM trunks on CMS. The CMS messages and reports are modified to support the expanded equipment location.

Dialed Number Identification Service (DNIS)

This feature displays, for a called party or answering position, the service or product associated with an incoming call. You administer what the system displays.

Direct agent calling

Direct agent calling lets the customer's callers automatically go directly to the same agent whenever they call for prompt, personalized service. These direct-to-the-agent calls are also included in their call center measurement statistics.

Dual links to CMS

The dual links to CMS feature provides an additional TCP/IP link to a separate CMS for full, duplicated CMS data collection functionality and high availability CMS configuration. The same data is sent to both servers, and the administration can be done from either server.

The ACD data is delivered over different network routes to prevent any data loss from such conditions as:

- ACD link failures
- CMS hardware or software failures
- CMS maintenance
- CMS upgrades

Duplicate agent login ID administration

Duplicate agent login ID administration simplifies administration of similar agent login ID forms.

Agent-loginID skill pair increase

Since the LINUX platform supports 20,000 administered agent-loginIDs, the administered agent-loginID skill pairs has been increased from 65,000 to 180,000.

With this enhancement, customers could administer an average of 9 skills per agent for the 20,000 agent-loginIDs (180,000/20,000). Customers could also administer 9,000 agents with 20 skills each (180,000/20). The number of skill pairs is administered on the `DISPLAY CAPACITY SAT` form using the `Administered Logical Agent-Skill Pairs` field.

NOTE:

This capacity increase applies only to the S8700 Media Server and other configurations that have the S8700 capacities.

Expert Agent Selection (EAS)

Expert Agent Selection (EAS) enables certain skill types to be assigned to a call type or a Vector Directory Number (VDN). Routing calls through vectoring then allows the system administration to direct calls to agents who have the particular agent skills required to complete the customers' inquiries.

Add/remove skills

Allows an agent using expert agent selection (EAS) to add or remove skills. A skill is a numeric identifier that refers to an agent's specific ability. For example, an agent who speaks English and Spanish could be assigned a language-speaking skill with an identifier of 20. The agent then adds skill 20 to his or her set of working skills. If a customer needs a Spanish-speaking agent, the system routes the call to an agent with that skill. Each agent can have up to four active skills, and each skill is assigned a priority level.

Call distribution based on skill

Calls that require certain agent skills (such as "knowledgeable about product X" or "speaks Spanish") can be matched to an agent who matches the required skill. You can assign one of up to 999 skill numbers to each need or group of needs. The skills are administered and associated for each of the following:

- Vector directory numbers (VDN)
- Agent login IDs
- Callers

This refined skill definition capability allows you to organize call handling based on customer, product, and language, for example.

Queue to best ISDN support

Queue to best information is passed transparently over several public networks and QSIG private networks using the envelopes that are part of the QSIG Manufacturer-Specific Information (MSI) and the ISDN platform enhancement.

Least Occupied Agent (LOA)

The Least Occupied Agent (LOA) feature distributes calls evenly across all available agents, balancing the workload among agents with fewer skills and agents with several skills. LOA solves the problem of agents who are bombarded with calls after logging into a skill at the start of a shift, while the agents who are already logged in have maintained their current incoming call level.

Multiple call handling (forced)

This feature allows agents to receive an ACD call while other types of calls are alerting, active, or on hold.

Multiple split queuing

Multiple split queuing lets customers direct a call to several splits at the same time, so that the first available agent can take the call. It can help customers handle the busiest periods with greater ease and provide faster service to their callers.

Priority queuing

Priority queuing allows special callers to be assigned priority status and routed ahead of other callers. Clients can pamper their best customers with the fastest attention possible.

Reason codes

Allows agents to enter a numeric code that describes their reason for entering auxiliary (AUX) work mode or for logging out of the system. Reason codes give call center managers detailed information about how agents spend their time. You can use this data to develop more precise staffing forecasting models or use it with schedule-adherence packages to ensure that agents are performing scheduled activities at the scheduled time. You must have expert agent selection (EAS) enabled to use reason codes.

Redirection on no answer

This feature redirects a ringing ACD split or skill call or direct agent call after an administered number of rings. This prevents an unanswered call from ringing indefinitely. The call can redirect either to the split or skill to be answered by another agent or to a Vector Directory Number (VDN) for alternative call handling. Direct agent calls route to the agent's coverage path, or to a VDN if no coverage path is administered. You must have ACD enabled to use this feature.

Site statistics for remote port networks

The site statistics for remote port networks feature forwards location IDs to CMS to provide call center site-specific reports.

VuStats

VuStats presents BCMS statistics on telephone displays. Agents, supervisors, call center managers, and other users can press a button and view statistics for agents, splits or skills, VDNs, and trunk groups. These statistics can help agents monitor their own performance, or respond appropriately to the caller's request. Features include:

- VuStats login IDs
- VuStats service level

Miscellaneous

Avaya call center features supported on the Avaya G700 Media Gateway

Avaya Call Center functionality is supported on the G700 Media Gateway with Communication Manager, with either an S8300 Media Server or an S8700 Media Server.

The Avaya S8300 Media Server or S8700 Media Server with the Avaya G700 Media Gateway provides Avaya Call Center "Basic" software (included with Communication Manager) capability and optional Computer Telephony Integration (CTI) as a lower-cost call center solution for small or branch offices. For the latest capacities of supported number of agents and media gateways, please see the capacities document available at <http://www.avaya.com/support>. See "[Capacities](#)" on page 32 for instructions how to locate the capacities document.

The Avaya G700 Media Gateway with the Avaya S8300 Media Server supports more robust call center capabilities including Avaya Call Center "Deluxe," which supports Avaya Best Service Routing and optional Avaya Virtual Routing, and Avaya Call Center "Elite," which features Avaya Expert Agent Selection and services as the foundational software for the optional Avaya Business Advocate and Avaya Dynamic Advocate software.

The call center capabilities found in either optional software package (Deluxe or Elite) allow Communication Manager Call Center customers to enhance their customer service, help desk, travel, and other operations by providing powerful, integrated call routing via "call vectoring" and resources selection.

Caller Information Forwarding (CINFO)

The Avaya call center also supports AT&T Caller Information Forwarding (CINFO) service, allowing customers to collect customer-provided data forwarded through the network. This information can be used to route calls or provide visual displays on agent voice terminals, or be passed along to Computer Telephony Integration (CTI) applications.

Multiple music/audio sources

Multiple music/audio sources lets customers deliver music or customized announcements to callers while they are in queue, helping to make the waiting time more productive or entertaining. Customers can provide information about their products, services, other call center applications, offer public service information, or play music.

Network Call Redirection (NCR)

Today, call center customers are looking for many ways to reduce their costs. One of these ways is to employ Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN) virtual private networks (VPNs) to eliminate as much private network cost as possible. These cost reductions are particularly valuable in enterprises or multi-site call-center environments and especially to enterprise call centers where network costs are typically high.

Network call redirection (NCR) offers a call redirection method between sites on a public network or a PSTN VPN, to help reduce trunking costs. NCR may only be activated for incoming ISDN trunk calls where the associated trunk group has been enabled by the public network service provider to use network call transfer or network call deflection features.

ETSI Explicit Call Transfer (ECT) signaling

The Network Call Redirection (NCR) support of the “ETSI Explicit Call Transfer” feature is desired by multi-site, non-U.S. Avaya call center customers who use various PSTN service providers for ISDN services. These non-U.S. call centers wish to accomplish call transfers between sites without holding the ISDN trunks of a transferred call at the call redirecting Communication Manager site.

The Network Call Redirection/Network Call Deflection (NCR/NRD) feature does not allow for announcement and call-prompting call-vectoring operations. Therefore, the ETSI ECT feature is for these call center customers who cannot use NCR/NRD since they wish to play an announcement to a caller and use Communication Manager call-prompting to allow the caller to determine the routing for the call.

Network call redirection 2B-channel transfer

This enhancement adds support for the 2B-Channel Transfer PSTN network transfer protocols to the Network Call Redirection (NCR) feature. The protocols that are supported are:

- Telcordia TBCT (offered by local and inter-exchange PSTNs with Lucent 5Ess or Nortel DMS100 switches in US or Canada)
- 1998 ANSI Explicit Call Transfer (ECT) for future use.

Another form of network transfer is where the PBX sets up the second leg call and asks the network to merge the incoming call with the outgoing call (the 2B-channels) and drops the trunks to the PBX.

PC Application Software Translation Exchange (PASTE)

PC Application Software Translation Exchange (PASTE) allows users to view call center data on display phones, displaying what each terminal button is, and what the feature access codes for the switch are. PASTE is used in conjunction with Avaya IP agent.

Remote logout of agent

The remote logout of agent feature allows a select set of users to log out an agent using a feature access code.

Service observing

Service observing allows a specified user, such as a supervisor, to observe or monitor another user's calls. A vector directory number call can also be observed. Observers can observe in listen-only or listen-and-talk mode. You set up service observing to observe a particular extension, not all calls to all extensions at a terminal.

⇒ NOTE:

Service observing may be subject to federal, state, or local laws, rules, or regulations or require the consent of one or both of the call parties. Familiarize yourself and comply with all applicable laws, rules, and regulations before using this feature.

Service observing by COR

Service observing by class of restriction (COR) restricts certain users from using the service observing feature.

Service observing of VDNs

Service observing of VDNs (also known as VDN observing on agent answer) allows a supervisor to start observing a call to the VDN when the call is delivered to the agent station. The observer will not hear the call during vector processing (announcements, music, and so on).

Service observing remote

This option will allow observing from non-feature button equipped stations. An observer will be able to monitor a VDN or a physical extension remotely using an “observe FAC” procedure through the remote access feature and/or call vectoring/call prompting features (through VDNs).

Vector-initiated service observing

Vector-initiated service observing, also called VDN observing on agent answer, allows users to start observing of a call to the VDN when the call is delivered to the agent or station. This saves time for the observer after observing of the VDN has been activated since the observer does not have to wait listening for each subsequent call to go through vector processing and for the agent to answer.

User-to-user information (UII) over the public network

This feature provides the mechanism to pass information across several key public networks, including information that is originated or destined for one of several applications on Communication Manager.

Voice Response Integration (VRI)

Voice Response Integration (VRI) integrates call vectoring with the capabilities of voice response units such as the Avaya CONVERSANT voice information system. You can also integrate a voice response unit with ACD. All this provides a variety of advantages. For example, while a call is queued, a caller can listen to product information via an audiotext application or can complete an interactive voice-response transaction. It may be possible to resolve the caller’s questions while the call is queued, which helps reduce queuing time for other callers during peak times.

Avaya Communication Manager contains a variety of features aimed at providing easy ways to collaborate with groups of peers, customers, and partners such as executives, sales people, and professional specialists. These key work groups require a high level of effective interaction.

Conferencing

Abort conference on hang-up

When you press the conference button and for any reason you hang up before you complete the conference, you will cancel the conference. The original call that was put on soft-hold is put on hard-hold.

Conference — three party

The conference button allows single-line telephone users to make up to three-party conference calls without attendant assistance.

Conference — six party

The conference button allows multi-appearance telephone users to make up to six-party conference calls without attendant assistance.

Conference/transfer display prompts

Conference/transfer display prompts are based on the user's class of restriction (COR). The display prompts are based on the user's COR, independent of the select line appearance conferencing and no dial tone conferencing feature. The display messages vary depending on the activation of the two features, but the choice of displaying the additional information or not is dependent on the station user's COR.

Conference/transfer toggle/swap

The conference/transfer toggle/swap feature allows users to toggle between two parties in the middle of setting up a conference call prior to connecting all parties together, or to consult with both parties prior to transferring a call. The display also toggles between the two parties.

Group listen

The group listen feature simultaneously activates your speakerphone in listen-only mode, and your handset or headset in listen-and-speak mode. This allows you to serve as spokesperson for a group. You can participate in a conversation while everyone else in the room is listening to what is said.

 **NOTE:**

This feature works only on certain types of telephones. It is not supported on IP telephones.

Hold/unhold conference

Allows user to use the HOLD button to bring the held party back to the conversation. This is an alternative to using the line appearance button. Hold/unhold only applies if there is only one line on hold and no other line appearances are active. An error message is displayed if the unhold feature is attempted when not allowed.

 **NOTE:**

This feature is not available for BRI stations or attendant consoles.

Meet-me conference

The meet-me conference feature allows a person to set up a dial-in conference of up to six parties. The meet-me conference feature uses call vectoring to process the setup of the conference call.

Meet-me conference can be optionally set up to require an access code. If an access code is assigned, and if the vector is programmed to expect an access code, each user dialing in to the conference call must enter the correct access code to be added to the call.

The meet-me conference extension can be dialed by any internal or remote access users, and by external parties if the extension number is part of the customer's DID block.

No dial tone conferencing

This feature can eliminate user confusion over receiving dial tone when trying to conference two existing calls. It skips the automatic line selection if there is already a party on hold or an alerting line appearance. Help messages help guide the user. This feature is assigned on a system wide basis.

No hold conference

This feature allows a user to automatically add another party to a conference call while continuing the conversation of the existing call. The new party is automatically entered into the conversation as soon as the call is answered. An optional tone can be provided prior to the party being added to the call.

⇒ NOTE:

The calling station cannot hold, conference, or transfer an Emergency Access to Attendant call. This applies to both the traditional means of using these features, and to the no-hold method of using these features.

After dialing is complete, if the No Hold Conference is not answered within the time specified in an administered "timeout" field, the No Hold Conference call is deactivated.

Select line appearance conferencing

If you are in a conversation on line “b”, and another line is on hold or an incoming call is alerting on line “a”, then pressing the CONF button bridges the calls together. Using the select line appearance feature on Communication Manager, the user has the option of pressing a line appearance button to complete a conference instead of pressing CONF a second time.

This feature only applies if the line is placed in soft hold by pressing the CONF button. This feature never applies if the soft hold was due to pressing a TRANSFER button.

Selective conference party display, drop, and mute

The selective conference party display, drop, and mute feature allows any user on a digital station with display or on an attendant console to use the display to identify all of the other parties on a two-party or conference call.

The user would press a feature button while on the call that puts the station or console into conference display mode. The user then can scroll through the display of each party currently on the call by repeatedly pressing the feature button. The display would show the party’s number and name (when available).

The user could then do either of the following:

- The user can selectively drop the party currently shown on the display with a single button push. This can be useful during conference calls when adding a party that does not answer and the call goes to voice mail.
- The user can selectively mute the party currently shown on the display with a single button push. This puts the selected party in “listen-only” mode. This can be useful during conference calls when a party puts the conference call on hold and everyone on the call is forced to listen to music-on-hold. The user can mute that party so the conference call can continue without interruption. The muted party can then rejoin the call by pressing the # key on their telephone.

CAUTION:

Station users must be careful when scrolling through the displays when using the selective conference party display feature. The station hyperactivity feature will take the station out of service if the user repeatedly scrolls through the displays at high enough rates. This causes the station to be reset and the user is dropped from the call.

Selective conference mute

Selective conference mute allows a conference call participant, who has a display station, to mute a noisy trunk line. Selective conference mute is also known as far end mute.

Examples of noisy trunk lines that might need to be muted during a conference call are:

- cell phones
- phones that utilize the Music-On-Hold feature
- phones with no mute capabilities

Selective conference mute only applies to trunk lines on the conference call, and not to stations. Only one trunk line on the conference call can be selectively muted at a time. This enhanced conferencing feature can be activated from any display station with a “conf-dsp” button and an “fe-mute” button.

The selective conference mute feature works with any conference established through Communication Manager, either a traditional 3 or 6 party conference or a Meet-Me conference.

⇒ NOTE:

This feature requires that the enhanced conferencing feature be set to Y on the “system-parameters customer-options” screen.

Multimedia calling

Multimedia calls are initiated with voice and video only. Once a call is established, one of the parties may initiate an associated data conference to include all of the parties on the call who are capable of supporting data. The data conference is controlled by an adjunct device called an Expansion Services Module (ESM).

Multimedia Application Server Interface (ASI)

The multimedia Application Server Interface (ASA) provides a link between Communication Manager and one or more multimedia communications eXchange nodes. A Multimedia Communications Exchange (MMCX) is a stand-alone multimedia call processor produced by Avaya. This link to Communication Manager enhances the capabilities of each multimedia communications eXchange system by enabling it to share some of the Communication Manager features.

In particular, the interface provides the following advantages:

- Call Detail Recording (CDR) — This allows you to capture call detail records so you can analyze the call patterns and usage of multimedia calls just as Communication Manager administrators analyze normal calls.
- Automatic Alternate Routing/Automatic Route Selection (AAR/ARS) — This allows for the intelligent selection of the most cost-effective routing for calls, based on available resources and your carrier preference. The system may select public trunks through a DEFINITY[®] MultiMedia Communication Exchange (MMCX).
- Voice mail integration — You can access your embedded AUDIX or INTUITY AUDIX voice messaging system from a MultiMedia Communication Exchange (MMCX).

Multimedia call early answer on vectors and stations

Early answer is a feature applied to multimedia calls in conjunction with conversion to voice. The early answer feature:

- Answers the data call
- Establishes the multimedia protocol prior to completion of a converted call
- Ensures that a voice path to/from the originator is available when the voice call is answered

For an incoming call, early answer answers the dynamic service-link calls when the destination endpoint answers, unless early answer is specified during routing or termination processing.

⇒ NOTE:

The “destination voice endpoint” might be an outgoing voice trunk if the destination voice station is forwarded or covered off-premises.

Multimedia Call Handling (MMCH)

See [“Multimedia Call Handling \(MMCH\)” on page 173](#).

Multimedia call redirection to multimedia endpoint

A dual port multimedia station may be a destination of call redirection features such as call coverage, forwarding, and station hunting. The station can receive and accept full multimedia calls or data calls converted to multimedia.

Multimedia data conferencing (T.120) through an ESM

The data conference is controlled by an adjunct device called an Expansion Services Module (ESM). The ESM is used to terminate T.120 protocols [including Generalized Conference Call (GCC), a protocol standard for data conference control] and provide data conference control and data distribution. The MultiMedia Interface circuit pack, TN787, is used to rate adapt T.120 data to/from the ESM.

For more information on ESM, see *Installation for Adjuncts and Peripherals for Avaya Communication Manager*, 555-233-116.

Multimedia hold, conference, transfer, and drop

Station users have the ability to activate hold, conference, transfer, or drop on multimedia calls. Multimedia endpoints and voice-only stations may participate in the same conference.

Multimedia queuing with voice announcement

When multimedia callers queue for an available member of a hunt group, they are able to hear an audio announcement.

Paging and intercom

Code calling access

This feature allows attendants, users, and tie trunk users to page with coded chime signals. This feature is helpful for users who are often away from their telephones or at a location where a ringing telephone might be disturbing.

Group paging

Group paging allows a user to make an announcement to a group of people using speakerphones. The speakerphones are automatically turned on when the user begins the announcement. The recipients can listen to the message over the handset if they wish, but they cannot speak to the user in return.

A group page member will not receive the page if the member is active on a call appearance, has a call ringing, is off-hook, has “send-all calls” active, or has “do not disturb” active.

Intercom — automatic

With this feature, users who frequently call each other can do so by pressing one button instead of dialing an extension number. Calling users press the automatic intercom button and lift the handset. The called user receives a unique intercom ring and the intercom lamp, if provided, flashes.

Intercom — automatic answer

Automatic answer intercom (auto answer ICOM) allows a user to answer an intercom call within the intercom group without pressing the intercom button. Auto answer ICOM works with digital, BRI, and hybrid phones with built-in speaker, headphones, or adjunct speakerphone.

Intercom — dial

This feature allows multi-appearance telephone users to easily call others within an administered group. The calling user lifts the handset, presses the dial intercom button, and dials the one-digit or two-digit code assigned to the desired party. The called user's telephone rings, and the intercom lamp, if provided, flashes. With this feature, a group of users who frequently call each other can do so by pressing one button and dialing a one-digit or two-digit code instead of dialing an extension number.

Loudspeaker paging access

Loudspeaker paging access provides attendants and telephone users dial access to voice paging equipment. As many as nine paging zones can be provided by the system, and one zone can be provided that activates all zones at the same time.

⇒ NOTE:

A zone is the location of the loudspeakers — for example, conference rooms, warehouses, or storerooms.

A user can activate this feature by dialing the trunk access code of the desired paging zone, or the access codes can be entered into abbreviated dialing lists. Once you have activated this feature, you can simply speak into the handset to make the announcement.

Deluxe loudspeaker paging access (called deluxe paging) provides attendants and telephone users with integrated access to voice-paging equipment and call park capabilities. When you activate deluxe paging, the call is automatically parked. The parked call returns to the parking user with distinctive alerting when the time-out interval expires.

Manual signaling

Allows one user to signal another user. The receiving user hears a two-second ring. The signal is sent each time the button is pressed by the signaling user. The meaning of the signal is prearranged between the sender and the receiver. Manual signaling is denied if the receiving telephone is already ringing from an incoming call.

Whisper page

Whisper page allows an assistant or colleague to bridge onto your telephone conversation and give you a message without being heard by the other party or parties you are talking to. Whisper page works only on certain types of telephones.

2402 DCP telephones

The 2402 Digital Communications Protocol (DCP) telephone is a digital telephone with dual (two) call appearance capabilities. The 2402 DCP phone has both permanently-labeled feature buttons and administrable feature buttons. The 2402 does not support firmware downloads.

The 2402 telephone is aliased as a 6402 DCP telephone, with the following special instructions:

- The shifted dial pad # (“pound”) key on the 6402 administration form must be administered as an autodial button. Also, the dialup number for the voice mail system must be programmed into that autodial button. Since the Messages button on the 2402 telephone has the same button address as the 6402 shifted dial pad # (“pound”) key, the 2402 Messages button now accesses the messages server.
- While aliased as a 6402, the 2402 shifted dial pad # (“pound”) key cannot have an administered function. That is, the 2402 has 11, not 12, administrable feature buttons.

2420 DCP telephones

The 2420 Digital Communications Protocol (DCP) telephone is a digital telephone with an optional feature expansion module and downloadable call appearance/feature buttons information. The 2420 DCP phone does not need paper labels. The button information appears on a screen on the phone. The firmware for the 2420 phone can be changed remotely.

The 2420 telephone uses icons to indicate the status of call appearances, bridged call appearances, and features.

Firmware download enhancements

An SAT interface for 2420 DCP station firmware downloads allows a user to initiate, schedule, and status the download. This feature provides the ability to download multiple 2420 stations simultaneously.

Personalized labels for the abbreviated dialing (AD) system list

An administrator can type personalized labels for the Abbreviated Dialing (AD) System list entries. Whenever a 2420 DCP telephone has a feature button that is administered as an entry in the AD system list, the feature button label that is downloaded to the 2420 telephone set is the personalized label.

These personalized labels can be administered in the standard supported languages (English, French, Italian, Spanish, and a user-defined language). If a personalized label has not been administered for the AD system list entry, the feature button label that is downloaded to the phone is AD nn , where nn is the abbreviated dialing number.

⇒ NOTE:

This enhancement applies only to the AD system list.

Voice mail retrieval button

Avaya Communication Manager supports the voice mail retrieval feature as a fixed feature button on the 2420 DCP and the 4602 telephone.

A field, “voice-mail Number: _____” appears on the station form for stations of type 2420 and 4602. The allowed values for this field are identical to the values allowed for an autodial feature button number. The field is a fixed field allowing entry of up to 16 digits that are auto-dialed to access the user's voice mail system.

- If the number field is blank, the voice mail retrieval button is treated like the “Transfer to Voice Mail” button.
- If the number field is not blank, the voice mail retrieval button is treated like an autodial button.

3410 wireless telephone

See [“3410 wireless telephone” on page 122](#).

3606 wireless VoIP telephone

See [“3606 wireless VoIP telephone” on page 123.](#)

4600-series IP telephones

The 4600 IP telephones use the IP technology with ethernet line interfaces and downloadable firmware. These telephones emulate DCP 6400-series telephones and provide all of the same features except for the group listen speakerphone feature. This series of telephones includes the 4602, 4606, 4610SW, 4612, 4620, 4624, 4630, and 4690 models.

4602 and 4602SW IP telephones

The 4602 and 4602SW telephones have improved functionality, including enhanced security and improved VLAN operation. The 4602SW telephone has a built-in Ethernet switch.

4602SIP telephone

A version of the 4602 telephone supports the Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) for basic call control.

For more information on SIP, see [“Session Initiation Protocol \(SIP\)” on page 138.](#)

4610SW IP telephone

The 4610SW IP telephone has a built-in Ethernet switch. The 4610SW IP telephone provides advanced feature functionality with an intuitive and innovative user interface.

- a 168-by-80 pixel 4-gray scale display
- four softkeys
- six dynamically labeled call appearance/feature buttons
- four unique fixed feature buttons

The 4610SW IP telephone is aliased as a 4620 IP telephone.

4620 and 4630 IP telephones

The 4620 IP telephone has downloadable call appearance/feature buttons information that eliminates the need for paper labels. The 4630 IP screen phone uses a large color touch-sensitive screen to operate the telephone functions.

Enhanced features for the 4620 and 4630 IP telephones (only) include:

- Improved endpoint connection recovery algorithm
- AES media encryption (see [“AES encryption algorithm for bearer channels” on page 185](#))
- Unicode support (see [“Unicode support” on page 90](#))

4690 IP conference room speaker phone

The 4690 IP SoundStation conference room speaker phone supports Avaya's H.323-based IP single-connect protocol, including registration and proprietary DCP/CCMS messages. It supports multiple call appearances and administrable features. The 4690 IP conference station is aliased as a 4620 telephone so that it can receive downloaded button labels.

Katakana character set

Communication Manager supports the katakana character set (Japan) on 4620 IP telephones. This nine-point character font was designed to allow the 4620 IP telephone to display katakana characters in the user interface as well as in switch-generated messages.

This feature requires 4620 firmware version 1.72 or later to work. You can obtain the latest version of 4620 firmware at no charge by going to the Avaya Web site at <http://www.avaya.com/support/>.

Unicode support

Communication Manager supports the display of non-English static and dynamic display text on Unicode-enabled endpoints. Non-English display information is entered into a Avaya Integrated Management application. Communication Manager processes, stores, and transmits the non-English text to endpoints that support Unicode displays.

Unicode support provides the capability of supporting international and multi-national communications solutions. End-users are provided with a communications interface (delivered by an IP telephone or IP Softphone) in their own native language. This feature supports the Simplified Chinese, Japanese, and Korean (CJK) character sets.

Voice mail retrieval button

See [“Voice mail retrieval button” on page 88.](#)

6200-series analog telephones

The 6210, 6211, 6218, 6219, 6220, and 6221 two-wire, analog telephones are designed to take advantage of the many features offered by Communication Manager. They offer the following features.

- Message light
- Flash and redial buttons
- Hold button and hold light
- Handset volume control
- Data jack (for connecting a modem or similar device)
- Personalized ringing, speakerphone button and light, and programmable dialing buttons (6220 only)

6400-series DCP telephones

The two-wire, DCP 6400 digital telephones are similar to the 8400 telephones, and feature global styling and a pullout instruction card. The 6400 telephones also include the following additional features:

- Date and time display.
- A feature button which allows switchhook control of a headset.
- *Group listen* capability, which allows you to use your handset or headset normally while others in the room listen in via speakerphone. This two-way handset, one-way speaker mode allows you to serve as a spokesperson for a group.
- *Telephone self administration* capability, which allows you to program feature buttons on the telephone yourself.

6400 tip/ring interface module

This module provides a two-wire analog interface for the 6400 DCP telephones. This allows the operation of an analog adjunct to be independent of the digital telephone's extension for the use of fax machines or modems without compromising the user's voice extensions.

8400-series telephones

The 8400 digital telephones are versatile two-wire/four-wire DCP telephones. They automatically detect whether they are plugged into a two-wire or four-wire digital line circuit card.

Attendant console

An attendant console is a digital call-handling station with push-button control that is used not only to answer and place calls, but also to manage and monitor some system operations.

The attendant display shows call-related information that helps the attendant to operate the console. The display also shows personal service and message information. Information is shown on the alphanumeric display on the attendant console. Attendants may select one of several available display message languages: English, French, Italian, or Spanish. In addition, your company may define one additional language for use by users and attendants on their display.

Avaya IP Agent

Avaya IP Agent is a PC-based IP application that allows agents to use their PCs as phones. In addition to the traditional functionality of a standard phone (transfer, hold, conference, and so forth), IP agent offers directory services, screen pops, call history, and agent mode history.

Avaya IP Softphone

Avaya IP Softphone extends the level of Communication Manager services. This feature turns a PC or a laptop into an advanced telephone. Users can place calls, take calls, and handle multiple calls on their PCs.

 **NOTE:**

R1 and R2 IP Softphone and IP Agent, which use a dual connect (two extensions) architecture, are no longer supported. R3 and R4 IP Softphone and IP Agent, which use a single connect (one extension) architecture, continue to be supported. This applies to the RoadWarrior configuration and the Native H.323 configuration for the IP Softphone.

The R5 release of the IP Softphone supports a number of enhanced features, including the following:

- Improved endpoint connection recovery algorithm
- AES media encryption (see [“AES encryption algorithm for bearer channels” on page 185](#))
- Instant Messaging (see [“SIP Instant Messaging and Presence \(IMPress\)” on page 138](#))
- Unicode support (see [“Unicode support” on page 90](#))
- Softphone and Telephone Shared Control (see [“IP Softphone and IP Agent — Shared Control mode” on page 93](#))

The IP Softphone provides a graphical user interface with enhanced capabilities when used with certain models of DCP telephones. Communication Manager supports a mode of H.323 registration that allows an IP Softphone to register for the same extension as a DCP telephone without disabling the telephone. It also allows the IP Softphone to send button-push messages and receive display and call progress messages in parallel with the telephone. In this mode, the Softphone does not terminate any audio.

IP Softphone and IP Agent — RoadWarrior mode

IP Softphone and IP Agent, RoadWarrior mode, enables use of the full Avaya Communication Manager feature set from temporary remote locations anywhere in the world. The RoadWarrior application consists of two software applications running on a PC that is connected to Communication Manager over an IP network.

The single network connection between the PC and Communication Manager carries two channels, one for the signaling path and one for the voice path. On Communication Manager, the RoadWarrior application requires the CLAN circuit pack for signaling and the IP media processor for voice processing.

IP Softphone and IP Agent — Shared Control mode

IP Softphone and IP Agent, Shared Control mode, enables users to have a telephone endpoint and an IP Softphone in service simultaneously on the same extension number. IP Softphone and an IP telephone can be integrated so that the IP softphone can control the IP telephone on a person's desk, and vice versa. This allows the power of the PC desktop (LDAP directories, TAPI PIMs/Contact Managers, etc.) to be used in conjunction with a desktop IP telephone.

An IP softphone can register to an extension number that is already assigned to an in-service telephone endpoint. From that point on, user actions carried out by either endpoint apply to calls to or from the extension. Only the telephone endpoint carries audio for the extension, however.

IP Softphone and IP Agent — Telecommuter mode

IP Softphone and IP Agent, Telecommuter mode, enables telecommuters to use the full Communication Manager feature set from home. It consists of a PC and a telephone with separate connections to Communication Manager. The PC provides the signaling path and the user interface for call control. A standard telephone provides a high-quality voice path. The Telecommuter application requires the CLAN circuit pack for signaling. The Telecommuter application does not use the IP media processor.

Avaya IP Softphone for pocket PC

Avaya IP Softphone for pocket PC extends the level of Communication Manager services. This feature turns a hand-held personal digital assistant (PDA) into an advanced telephone. Users can place calls, take calls, and handle multiple calls on their PDAs.

Avaya Communication Manager PC console

The Communication Manager PC console allows your attendants to efficiently handle incoming calls by personal computer. Using the familiar Microsoft Windows graphical user interface (GUI), the attendants can easily keep track of how long callers have been on hold and who they are waiting for. Attendants can monitor up to six calls at once.

Attendants do not need to use pen and paper when handling calls because they can make notes on their computers about what each caller needs. All this contributes to make a favorable first impression with your customers. Having the call processing software on the same computer with spreadsheet, word processing, or other software allows the attendants to stay productive between calls.

The PC console is easily customized, so even if attendants from different shifts share the same computer, they can each preserve their preferences in the call processing environment. The PC console is available in English, Parisian French, Latin American Spanish, German, Dutch, Italian, and Portuguese. If a Spanish-speaking attendant takes over for a French-speaking attendant, for example, a single press of a button converts all labels, error messages, and online help to Spanish.

Avaya Communication Manager on an S8100 Media Server

The S8100 Media Server includes the full feature set of Communication Manager. The co-resident LAN Gateway for CTI connectivity is an optional feature on the S8100 Media Server.

Avaya SoftConsole

The Avaya SoftConsole is a Windows-based GUI application that can replace the physical 302B “hard” console. It allows attendants to perform call answering and routing through a PC interface through an IP connection.

DEFINITY AnyWhere

DEFINITY[®] AnyWhere gives you remote access to the powerful voice and data capabilities of your system running Communication Manager.

Communication Manager provides powerful voice features and data collaboration capabilities in your office. With DEFINITY AnyWhere, you can have the same functionality when you are working at your virtual office, traveling, or in your hotel room.

DEFINITY AnyWhere is a software application that installs and runs on a Microsoft Windows NT server within your intranet. It provides “single number” accessibility by redirecting calls to any remote phone number. With DEFINITY AnyWhere, your customers and colleagues will appreciate that you are accessible at one number and never out of reach.

Avaya extension to cellular

The Avaya extension to cellular feature provides the expansion of mobile services, including one-number availability, increased user capacities, flexibility across facilities and hardware, more control over unauthorized usage, enhanced enable/disable capability, increased serviceability, and support of IP trunk facilities.

For more information, see [“Avaya extension to cellular/OPS” on page 123](#).

Alphanumeric dialing

Alphanumeric dialing allows you to place data calls by entering an alphanumeric name rather than a long string of numbers.

Attendant room status

See [“Attendant room status” on page 46.](#)

Automatic selection of Direct Inward Dialing (DID) numbers

This feature allows the system to automatically choose a number from a list of available Direct Inward Dialing (DID) numbers that will be assigned to a guest's room extension when checking in.

With this feature, hotels can give a guest a second phone number that is different from their room number, thereby protecting the guest's privacy. When a particular DID number is called, the call routes to the guest's room extension, and covers as if the room was called directly. Besides improving guest security, this eliminates the need for an attendant or front desk staff to extend a call to a guest room.

Automatic wakeup

The automatic wakeup feature allows attendants, front desk users, and guests to request that one or two wake-up calls be automatically placed to a certain extension number at a later time. When a wakeup call is placed and answered, the system can provide a recorded announcement (which can be a speech synthesis announcement), music, or simply silence. With the integrated announcement feature, multiple announcements enable international guests to use wakeup announcements in a variety of languages. See [“Daily wakeup” on page 98](#), [“Dual wakeup” on page 99](#), and [“VIP wakeup” on page 101](#).

Check-in/check-out

This feature allows front desk personnel to check guests into a hotel and, when the guests leave, check them out. There are two ways this is done: through the PMS terminal or through the attendant console (or backup telephone). Check-in and check-out from the attendant console should be used only if there is no Property Management System (PMS), or if the link to the PMS is down. If the PMS is installed and working, check guests in and out using the PMS.

For guest check-in or check-out from the console, there are two buttons on the attendant console (or backup telephone): one labeled “Check in” and the other labeled “Check out.” The check-in procedure performs two functions: it deactivates the restriction on the telephone in the room allowing outward calls, and it changes the status of the room to occupied.

Custom selection of VIP DID numbers

This feature builds on the automatic selection of DID numbers feature. It allows hotel personnel to control what DID number is assigned to a hotel room at check-in. That is, the system asks the user to specify the desired DID number when a guest is checked in. The number comes from a pool of DID numbers that are separate from those used by the automatic selection feature. The system never automatically assigns numbers from this pool. Numbers from this pool are used only when explicitly specified by the user.

Daily wakeup

Daily wakeup allows a guest or front desk personnel to schedule a single wakeup request for a daily wakeup call. For example, if a guest needs to receive a wakeup call at 5:30 a.m. for the duration of his or her stay, one request can be placed on the system instead of placing a separate request for each day.

Dial-by-name

The dial-by-name feature allows callers to the system to access guest rooms simply by dialing the name of the guest they are trying to contact. This feature uses recorded announcements and the call vectoring feature to set up an automatic attendant procedure. This automatic attendant procedure gives callers the ability to enter a guest's name. When a single or unique match is found, the call is redirected to the guest's telephone.

Do not disturb

The do not disturb feature allows guests, attendants, and authorized front desk users to request that no calls, other than priority calls, be connected to a particular extension until a specified time.

Dual wakeup

This feature allows guests to have two separate wakeup calls. The dual wakeup feature is an enhancement to the standard automatic wakeup feature used in hospitality environments.

With the standard wakeup feature, guests or front desk personnel can create one wakeup call for each extension. The dual wakeup feature allows guests and front desk personnel to create either one or two wakeup calls. The dual wakeup feature for guests is valid only when the system is not equipped with a speech synthesizer circuit pack.

Housekeeping status

The housekeeping status feature records the status for up to six housekeeping codes and reports them to the property management system (PMS). These status codes are usually entered by the housekeeping staff from the guest room or from a designated telephone. They can also be updated by the front office personnel using the attendant console or a backup telephone. Six status codes can be used from guest rooms, and four status codes can be used from telephones that do not have the client room class of service (COS).

Names registration

The names registration feature automatically sends a guest's name and room extension from the property management system (PMS) to the switch at check-in, and automatically removes this information at check-out. The information may be displayed on any attendant console or display-equipped telephone at various hotel locations (for example, room service or security).

Property Management System (PMS) digit to insert/delete

Many customer configurations base a room's telephone extension on the room number by adding an extra leading digit. The PMS digit to insert/delete feature allows users to delete the leading digit of the extension in messages. The feature is useful for a hotel that has multiple extensions sharing an extra leading digit in front of the room number. The leading digit is automatically inserted when the message goes to the switch.

The PMS interface supports 3-digit, 4-digit, or 5-digit extensions, but prefixed extensions do not send the entire number across the interface. Only the assigned extension number is sent. Therefore, you should not use prefixed extensions for numbers that are also going to use the digit to insert/delete function.

Property Management System (PMS) interface

The Property Management System (PMS) allows a customer to control features used in both a hospital-type and a hotel/motel-type environment. The communications link allows the property management system to interrogate the switch, and allows information to be passed between the switch and the PMS. The switch exchanges guest status information (room number, call coverage path, and other data) with the PMS.

There are two ways that the guest data can be encoded:

- Using a combination of Binary Coded Decimal (BCD) encoding and the ASCII character set
- Using only the ASCII character set

Single-digit dialing and mixed station numbering

This feature provides hotel staff and guests easy access to internal hotel/motel services, and provides the capability to associate room numbers with guest room telephones. The feature provides the following dial plan types: single-digit dialing, prefixed extensions, and mixed numbering.

Suite check-in

Suite check-in allows more than one station to be checked in at one time. This is useful for a guest room that may have multiple extensions. This feature allows all extensions to be checked in at the same time. Suite check-in using the hunt-to feature will also check out all the extensions in the entire suite at the same time.

VIP wakeup

The VIP wakeup feature allows front desk personnel to provide personalized wakeup calls to important guests. When a wakeup call has been scheduled for an important guest, a wakeup reminder call is placed to the front desk personnel, who in turn personally calls the guest to provide the wakeup call.

Wake-up activation using confirmation tones

If a speech synthesizer circuit pack is not installed, guests can still enter their own wakeup calls (two wakeup calls if the dual wakeup feature is active). The guests do not receive voice prompts as they would using the speech synthesizer circuit pack. Instead, guests receive call progress tones (recall dial tone and confirmation tone) to set up their wakeup calls.

Xiox call accounting

The Xiox call accounting works as an adjunct with any system with hospitality features. Xiox call accounting allows hotel management to use their property's telephone system as a major source of revenue by generating the information they need to make important decisions about their network and usage.

Administrable language displays

This feature allows messages that appear on telephone display units to be shown in the language spoken by the user. These messages are available in English (the default), French, Italian, Spanish, or one other user-defined language. The language for display messages is selected by each user. The feature requires 40-character display telephones.

Katakana character set

See [“Katakana character set” on page 90](#).

Administrable loss plan

The administrable loss plan provides the ability to administer signal loss and gain for telephone calls. This capability is necessary because the amount of loss allowed on voice calls can vary by country. With the administrable loss plan feature, switch endpoints are classified into 17 endpoint types, and the loss plan can be administered for trunks, stations, and personal CO lines. Loss values are in the range of 15 dB loss to 3 dB gain. Preset defaults are available and are based on country type.

Bellcore calling name ID

This feature allows the system to accept calling name information from a Local Exchange Carrier (LEC) network that supports the Bellcore calling name specification. The system can send calling name information in the format if Bellcore calling name ID is administered. The following caller ID protocols are supported:

- Bellcore (default) - US protocol (Bellcore transmission protocol with 212 modem protocol)
- V23-Bell - Bahrain protocol (Bellcore transmission protocol with V.23 modem protocol).

Block collect call

This feature blocks collect calls on class-of-restriction basis. This feature is available for any switch that uses the Brazil country code. If enabled for a station, all trunk calls that terminate to the station will send back a double answer to the central office (CO). This double answer tells the CO that this particular station cannot accept collect calls. The CO then tears down the call if it is a collect call.

Busy tone disconnect

In some regions of the world, the CO sends a busy tone for the disconnect message. With busy tone disconnect, the switch disconnects analog loop-start CO trunks when a busy tone is sent from the CO.

Country-specific localization

Italy

Distributed Communications Systems (DCS) protocol

Enhanced DCS adds features to the existing DCS capabilities and requires the use of Italian TGU/TGE tie trunks.

Additional features include:

- Exchanging information to provide class of restriction (COR) checking between switches in the EDCS network
- Providing call-progress information for the attendant

- Allowing attendant intrusion between a main and a satellite PBX
- Allowing a main PBX to provide DID/CO intercept treatment rather than the satellite PBX

Japan

National private networking support

Provides support for Japanese private ISDN networks. The Japanese private network ISDN protocol is different from the standard ISDN protocol. The switch supports extensions to the ISDN protocol for switches using the Japanese country code.

Russia

Central Office (CO) support on G700 Media Gateway

Communication Manager supports central office (CO) trunks in Russia using the G700 Media Gateway.

ISDN/DATS network support

This feature supports ISDN/DATS trunk networks when the tone generated field is set to 15 (Russia) on the system-parameters country-options screen. It modifies the overlap sending delay and ISDN T302 and T304 timers to support the Russian trunk network.

Multi-Frequency Packet (MFP) signaling

Multi-Frequency Packet (MFP) address signaling is provided in Russia on outgoing CO trunks. Calling party number and dialed number information is sent on outgoing links between local and toll switches. Russian MFP is set on each trunk group on the 'type' field on the trunk screen.

⇒ NOTE:

Russian MFP does not apply to PCOL trunks.

E&M signaling — continuous and pulsed

Continuous and pulsed E&M signaling is a modification to the E&M signaling used in the United States. Continuous E&M signaling is intended for use in Brazil, but can also be used in Hungary. Pulsed E&M signaling is intended for use in Brazil.

Public network call priority

Provides call retention, forced disconnect, intrusion, mode-of-release control, and re-ring to switches on public networks. Different countries frequently refer to these capabilities by different names.

World class tone detection

World class tone detection enables Avaya Communication Manager to identify and handle different types of call progress tones, depending on the system administration. You can use the tone detector and identification to display on data terminal dialing and to decide when to send digits on trunk calls through abbreviated dialing, ARS, AAR, and data terminal dialing.

Audible message waiting

Audible message waiting places a stutter at the beginning of the dial tone when a telephone user picks up the telephone. The stutter dial tone indicates that the user has a message waiting. This feature is particularly useful for visually impaired people who may not be able to see a message light. It is often used with telephones that have no message waiting lights.

Audible message waiting may not be available in countries that restrict the characteristics of dial tones provided to users.

Avaya Interactive Response (IR)

The Avaya Interactive Response (IR) — formerly known as INTUITY Conversant[®] — voice information system is an interactive voice-response system that automates phone call transactions from simple tasks, like routing to the right department, to complex tasks, such as registering college students or providing bank balances. It communicates with customers in natural-sounding, digitally recorded speech, and performs 24-hours a day without the services of an operator.

The system can handle single or multiple voice-response applications simultaneously, and can serve up to 48 callers at once. It can operate by itself to dispense information or collect data, or it can work with a host computer to access a large database such as bank account records. With its speech-recognition capability, even rotary telephone users can have access to sophisticated phone-based services. Advanced telephone features provide intelligent call-transfer capabilities and allow you to use the system in your existing telephone environment.

Centralized voice mail through mode code integration

The centralized voice mail feature eliminates the need for a voice mail system at each of the sites in a network. It does so by allowing a network running Avaya Communication Manager to use a single INTUITY AUDIX or Octel 100 voice messaging system as a centralized voice mail system that serves the whole network. The INTUITY AUDIX or Octel 100 system can also serve as a centralized voice mail system within a hybrid network of Communication Manager, DEFINITY BCS, and Merlin Legend/Magix switches.

Dual DCP I-channels

This feature supports the use of dual DCP I-channels for AUDIX networking. In this case, networking refers to the ability to send data files between AUDIX systems, not to communications with the switch.

Embedded AUDIX

While many voice messaging systems require separate equipment and connections, the embedded AUDIX system easily installs directly into your cabinet to support advanced voice messaging capabilities without the need for an adjunct processor. Each embedded AUDIX system supports up to 2000 mailboxes and stores up to 100 hours of recorded messages.

Whenever you call the embedded AUDIX system, you interact with it by entering commands through your telephone's touch-tone keypad. You simply specify the desired activity, and follow the voice prompts for the desired task.

Special voice-processing features include voice mail, call answering, outcalling, multi-level automated attendant, and bulletin board. The following is a summary of embedded AUDIX capabilities:

- *Shared extensions* provide personal mailboxes for each person sharing a phone.
- *Multiple personal greetings* allows you to prepare a pool of up to nine personal greetings to save time and provide more personal customer service. Separate messages can indicate you are on the phone, away from the desk, on vacation, etc. You can assign different messages to internal, external, or after-hours calls.
- *Priority messaging* places important messages ahead of others. Internal and external callers can mark the message as priority.

- *Outcalling* automatically dials a prearranged phone number or pager when you have messages in your voice mailbox.
- *Priority outcalling* automatically dials a prearranged phone number or pager when you have *priority* messages in your voice mailbox.
- *Broadcasting* allows you to send a single message to multiple recipients or to all users on the system.
- *System broadcast* allows you to send broadcast messages as regular voice messages, or as messages that recipients hear as they log in.
- *AUDIX directory* allows you to look up the extension number of any other user by entering their name on the telephone keypad.
- *Personal directory* allows you to create a list of nicknames for quick access to telephone numbers.
- *Call answering for nonresident subscribers* provides voice mailboxes for users who do not have an extension number on the system.
- *Full mailbox answer mode* informs callers whenever messages cannot be left because there is no room in a subscriber's mailbox.
- *Name record by subscriber* lets you record your own name on the system.
- *Automatic message scan* can play all new messages in part or in their entirety without requiring you to press additional buttons, which is particularly useful when you are getting messages from your mobile phone.
- *Sending restrictions by community* enables you to limit the communities of callers who can communicate using AUDIX voice messaging.
- *Group lists* allows you to create mailing lists of up to 250 people to use for broadcasting messages.
- *Message forwarding* allows you to forward messages with or without attached comments.
- *Name addressing* allows you to address messages by name if you don't know the extension.
- *Private messaging* is a special coding feature that prevents recipients from forwarding messages.
- *Leave word calling* allows you to press a button on your telephone in order to leave a standard "call me" message on any extension.
- *Online help* provides you with instant access to voiced instructions at any time when you are using the system.
- *Multiple language support* allows you to install up to nine languages on the system, from a superset of 30 available languages.

- *Enhanced message handling* gives you the flexibility for handling messages. Two of these features are *optional advance/rewind* that lets you advance through and rewind individual messages, and *undelete messages* that lets you retrieve any messages that you may have accidentally deleted.

INTUITY AUDIX

INTUITY messaging solutions essentially offers the same user features as the embedded AUDIX system, plus the following features:

- *Fax messaging* allows you to handle faxes as easily as you handle voice mail. You can send, receive, store, scan, delete, skip, or forward faxes. This feature is fully integrated with voice messaging, so you can attach faxes to voice messages, for example. You can also create special mailboxes for each of your fax machines. These mailboxes accept fax telephone calls when the fax machine is busy and then deliver the fax to the fax machine when the fax machine is available.
- *Turn off AUDIX call answering* allows you to turn off call answering in order to conserve system resources. You can create a message that tells callers they cannot leave a message, giving them another number to call, for example.
- *Pre-addressing* allows you to address a message before recording it.
- *Integrated messaging* allows you access and manage incoming voice, fax, and e-mail messages and file attachments from your personal computer or your telephone. A voice message will thus appear in your e-mail mailbox, for example, and vice versa. You can also set options to have just the message headers appear in the alternate mailbox. You can also create a voice or fax message by telephone and send it to an e-mail recipient.
- *Text-to-speech* allows you listen to a voice rendering of text messages sent from a supported e-mail system and/or INTUITY message manager.
- *Print text* allows you to print messages sent from a supported e-mail system and/or INTUITY message manager.
- *Enhanced addressing* allows you to send a message to up to 1500 recipients.
- *Transfer restrictions* allow you to control toll fraud by restricting transfers going through the voice messaging system.
- *Internet messaging* allows you to exchange messages (voice and text) with any e-mail address via the World Wide Web.

- *Avaya voice director* allows you to address messages via spoken name, in addition to using touchtones to enter extensions or names. It also supports transferring to AUDIX subscribers, including those in other locations, by speaking a name.
- *International availability.*

Avaya IA770 INTUITY AUDIX messaging application (embedded INTUITY 5.1 messaging — Linux)

The IA770 application enhances communications and information exchange within enterprises, helping customers be more successful with call answering and messaging. The IA770 application enables customers to see messages on their PCs, add a voice mail component to an e-mail, and listen to e-mail using voice mail.

IA770 uses the Linux operating system, making it consistent with the G700 Media Gateway's operating system. The distributed architecture is designed for reliability and survivability and is centrally managed for simplicity, efficiency and quick response to help ensure business recovery.

The IA770 application consists of license file-activated software residing on the S8300 Media Server, and a small card that can be installed and upgraded in the field.

The IA770 application is available in two configurations:

- 4 ports, 100 users
- 8 ports, 300 users

The IA770 application includes INTUITY Message Manager. While the system provides text-to-speech capability in U.S. English only, there is no additional charge for initial implementation of any of the 35 available languages for prompts.

IA770 supports INTUITY digital (TCP/IP) and AMIS networking protocols. More extensive networking can be provided with the Avaya Interchange.

Using the Web interface, the administrator can perform a system backup and restore of all administered data — announcements, recorded names, greetings — and approximately 50 hours of messages over the local area network (LAN). The screens are easier to understand and more intuitive, which should cut installation time and lessen the need for training and experience. The IA770 system uses smart defaults rather than requiring every field to be addressed.

For more information on the IA770 messaging application, see the *S8300 and S8700 Library CD*, 555-233-825.

S8100 Media Server embedded INTUITY AUDIX

This application provides voice, fax, and text messaging, along with text-to-speech and message manager functionality in a single processor mezzanine board on the S8100 Media Server.

Included are Avaya Directory Enabled Management (DEM) and Fax Extended Dialing (FED).

- ADEM provides real time directory-based access to Communication Manager and INTUITY AUDIX.
- FED allows the customer to specify restrictions on the destination numbers, as well as eliminate the need to administer fax number ranges as remote AMIS networking machines. Additionally, FED addresses the entry of international destination numbers by allowing up to 23 digits for fax endpoints.

The INTUITY AUDIX mezzanine card also provides the necessary DSP resources for messaging. This hardware eliminates the need for the INTUITY Map 5P adjunct, usually required for this functionality.

Also see [“Embedded AUDIX” on page 108](#).

AUDIX one-step recording

Users can record conversations by pressing a single button. This feature uses AUDIX as the recording device. This feature is not available with INTUITY AUDIX through Mode Codes or remote AUDIX.

⇒ NOTE:

It is important that anyone who wants to activate this feature should study and understand your local laws regarding the recording of calls *before* activating this feature.

A feature button named `audix-rec` is used for this feature. The button is available for all stations that have administrable feature buttons. When administered, the button also requires a hunt group extension number (for the AUDIX extension number) along with it.

⇒ NOTE:

Attendant consoles do not have this button.

To record a conversation when a call is in process, press the `audix-rec` button. When you push the button, the LED light for the feature button begins to flash. After about 4~6 seconds, internal users who are participating in the call will notice that the telephone display changes to `CONFERENCE`. The LED light on the telephone that initiated the recording is steadily illuminated. This indicates that the AUDIX recording facility is ready and begins to record the conversation.

The internal users on the same switch with the display equipment can notice that the number of parties in the call increases by 1. At this point, depending on the administration, a ready indication tone will play to all the parties in the call, the initiator only, or none of the parties.

After enough information has been recorded, the initiator can then stop the recording by pressing the `audix-rec` button a second time when the LED light is illuminated. The LED light for the feature button on the initiator's station extinguishes. The internal users with the display equipment can again notice that the number of parties in the call decreases by 1. The call remains active.

The Interval For Applying Periodic Alerting Tone field is used to allow the switch administrator to choose an interval to play an alerting tone to all the parties on the call during recording. Values are 0–60, and the default is 15. This means, if the default value is used, that all parties on the call hear an alerting tone every 15 seconds that indicates the conversation is being recorded. If the value for the field is 0, then no periodic tone is played during recording.

INTUITY call accounting system

If you are using any of the INTUITY voice messaging products, the INTUITY call accounting system is probably the best call-accounting solution for you. The system works exclusively with INTUITY products, which reside on MAP/40 or MAP/100 computers. Offering many of same features as the call accounting system for Windows, the system also serves to help integrate your INTUITY applications.

INTUITY lodging

INTUITY lodging is a messaging system designed especially for lodging establishments such as hotels or other lodging providers such as hospitals or colleges. The system supplies guests with electronic mailboxes that store voice or fax messages. INTUITY lodging serves as a private answering machine for each extension.

Hotel guests can leave messages for each other without going through the attendant. For incoming calls, an attendant transfers the call to the appropriate room. If the guest does not answer the call or if the line is busy, the call is automatically transferred to the guest's voice mailbox, where the caller can leave a voice message. A message-waiting indicator on the guest's phone notifies the guest that the voice mailbox contains messages. Guests are assigned a password for accessing messages remotely. They can retrieve and save messages from any telephone, on or off premises.

Guests can hear voice mail prompts and menus in one of several languages. The current set of available languages includes the following:

- American English
- Arabic (female voice)
- Brazilian Portuguese
- British English
- Canadian French
- German
- Greek
- Japanese
- Latin American Spanish
- Mandarin Chinese
- Parisian French
- Russian

Any or all of these languages may be installed, but only nine can be made available at any one time. The attendant enters the guest's desired language at check-in time. The guests will hear menus and prompts in their chosen languages after logging in to retrieve messages. Contact your Avaya account representative for language options.

INTUITY lodging call accounting system

The INTUITY lodging call accounting package (an integrated offering from Homisco) takes call records supplied by the system, puts the records into a standard bill format, and sends the billing information to the property management system. When guests check out, their long distance calling charges are printed automatically on their bill. This gives you better control over telephone usage revenue.

Leave Word Calling (LWC)

Leave Word Calling (LWC) allows internal system users to leave a short preprogrammed message (usually “call” with the calling user’s name, extension number, and the time of the call) for other internal users. When the message is stored, the message lamp on the called telephone automatically lights.

LWC messages can be retrieved using a telephone display, voice message retrieval, or AUDIX. Messages may be retrieved in English, French, Italian, Spanish, or a user-defined language.

Leave Word Calling (LWC) — QSIG/DCS

The Leave Word Calling (LWC) feature is extended to enterprise networks with QSIG as the private network protocol, as well as those with DCS.

For enterprise networks that are mixed or in transition from DCS to QSIG, interworking of the LWC feature between the protocols can be provided. LWC also works within a single non-networked switch.

 **NOTE:**

A DCS+ signaling group is needed, but can only be used in networks with 4-digit or 5-digit dial plans.

Manual message waiting

This feature allows multi-appearance telephone users to light the status lamp associated with the manual message waiting button at another multi-appearance telephone. They do this by simply pressing a button on their own telephone. This feature can be administered only to pairs of telephones such as a secretary and an executive. The secretary might press the button to signal to the executive that a call needs answering or someone has arrived for an appointment. The executive might use the button to indicate that he or she should not be disturbed.

Message demand print

Message demand print allows you to print your undelivered messages without calling the message center.

Message retrieval

With the message waiting lamp on their telephones, employees always know when they have messages. Messages can be retrieved in a variety of ways. These message retrieval options can be assigned to individual users.

Display retrieval

Users having digital telephones with displays or a personal computer integrated with a telephone can display messages.

Speak-to-me

Using any touch-tone telephone, employees can dial speak-to-me and hear a synthesized voice read their messages over the telephone.

Message Sequence Tracer (MST) enhancements

In the past, it had been difficult to trace messages through the Message Sequence Tracer (MST) tool pertaining to a particular socket because there was no tag in each message distinguishing it from other sockets.

New message formats for outgoing and incoming data now include the socket number/identifier. These new formats use new Type identifiers of 05 and 06. A pair of new formats 07 and 08 have also been created for outgoing and incoming socket control messages on the PROCR ip-interface.

By creating new format types for these new formats, the task of decoding these messages is easier.

The following enhancement was made to the Message Sequence Tracer (MST):

- Signaling messages between Communication Manager and the TN799 CLAN can now be traced for better diagnostics during network outages.
 - Add processor TN799 CLAN socket information to the MST trace in order to help developers debug socket problems.
 - Enhance MST to include the socket number in socket data.
 - Add TN799 CLAN board ID to CLAN MST IP socket trace messages.

Mode code interface

Communication Manager supports an analog mode code interface for communications with INTUITY AUDIX and other voice mail systems using the same interface. This interface employs DTMF tones, line signals, and feature access codes, and allows INTUITY AUDIX to exchange data with Communication Manager without using a data link. Other adjunct vendors can engineer their products to use this interface.

Octel integration

Communication Manager integrates with the entire line of Octel messaging systems including the Octel 50 message server, Octel 100 message server, Octel 200/300 message server, and Octel 250/350 message server.

QSIG/DCS voice mail interworking

QSIG/DCS voice mail interworking is an enhancement to the QSIG feature. It integrates DCS and QSIG centralized voice mail using the DCS+/QSIG gateway. Switches labeled DCS+/QSIG integrate multi-vendor PBXs into a single voice messaging system. QSIG/DCS voice mail interworking works on G3r, G3si, and G3csi. It provides network flexibility, DCS functionality without a dedicated T1.

Multiple QSIG voice mail hunt groups

Communication Manager provides for ten message center hunt groups to support QSIG integrated messaging. This feature allows customers to spread users in a single Communication Manager system over multiple messaging systems. This allows users to move among Communication Manager systems while retaining their same voice mailbox. Users do not lose voice messages.

This feature also enhances customer usability of Avaya messaging systems in the enterprise by allowing not only for growth, but the ability to migrate end users on a single Communication Manager system.

Voice mail retrieval button

See [“Voice mail retrieval button” on page 88](#).

Voice message retrieval

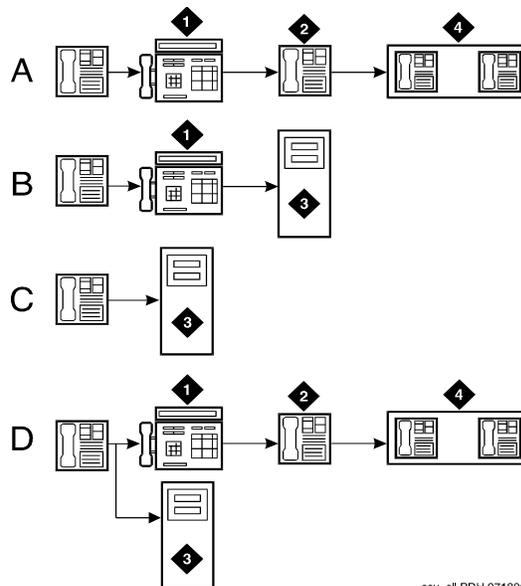
Voice message retrieval allows telephone users, remote access users, and attendants to retrieve leave word calling and call coverage voice messages. It can be used to retrieve a user's own messages or messages for another user. However, a different user's messages can be retrieved only by a user at a telephone or attendant console in the coverage path, by an administered system-wide message retriever, or by a remote-access user when the extension and associated security code are known. The system restricts unauthorized users from retrieving messages.

Voice messaging and call coverage

Often an AUDIX system is set up as the last point on a call-coverage path, as shown in [Figure 3](#). A secretary or colleague who answers a redirected call intended for you can also transfer the caller to your AUDIX mailbox. The caller may prefer to leave voice-mail for you if the message is personal, lengthy, or technical.

Many other options are available. For example, a caller can redirect a call from the AUDIX system to an attendant. Or the caller can transfer to another extension instead of leaving a message. You can even have the AUDIX automated attendant answer all calls to the company and send calls to various extensions. In this case, callers are instructed to enter keypad commands to direct the call.

Figure 3. Typical call coverage options



cov_cll PDH 071896

- | | | | |
|---|---|---|-----------------------|
| A | External call: active, busy, don't answer | 1 | Secretary |
| B | Internal call: cover all | 2 | Clerk |
| C | Internal call: active, busy, don't answer | 3 | AUDIX voice messaging |
| D | Internal call: send all calls | 4 | Message center group |
-

IP telephones or IP Softphones allow you to access the features of Avaya Communication Manager without having to be tied to one location. One of the major benefits of IP telephones is that you can move the telephones around on a LAN just by unplugging them and plugging them in somewhere else. One of the main benefits of IP softphones is that you can load them on a laptop PC, and then use the PC's modem to connect them to the switch from almost anywhere.

For more information, see [“4600-series IP telephones” on page 89](#) and [“Avaya IP Softphone” on page 92](#).

Administration Without Hardware (AWOH)

This feature allows you to administer telephones that are not yet physically present on the system. This feature works the same as administration with hardware: when stations are moved, user-activated features such as call forwarding and send all calls are preserved and functional. This greatly facilitates the speed of setting up and making changes to the telephones on the system.

Automatic Customer Telephone Rearrangement (ACTR)

Automatic Customer Telephone Rearrangement (ACTR) allows a phone to be unplugged from one location and moved to a different location without additional switch administration. The switch automatically associates the extension to the new port.

ACTR works with the 2420 DCP telephone and the 6400 serialized telephones. The 6400 serialized phone is stamped with the word “serialized” on the faceplate for easy identification. The 6400 serialized phone memory electronically stores its own part ID (comcode) and serial number. ACTR uses the stored information and associates the phone with new port when the phone is moved.

ACTR makes it easy to identify and move phones.

Avaya Wireless Telephone Solutions (AWTS)

Avaya Wireless Telephone Solutions (AWTS) is fully integrated with Communication Manager, and allows a user full access to Communication Manager features from a mobile telephone.

 **NOTE:**

Avaya Wireless Telephone Solutions (AWTS) replaces the DEFINITY Wireless Business System (DWBS).

AWTS incorporates two wireless telephone solutions with this feature:

- The 3410 wireless telephone solution
- The 3606 wireless VoIP telephone solution

3410 wireless telephone

The 3410 wireless telephone solution consists of the 3410 handsets, line-powered four-channel wireless base stations, and a Master Control Unit (MCU). The 3410 wireless telephone solution requires one DCP port per handset, has up to six line appearances and twelve feature buttons, and emulates an 8410D desk telephone.

Then MCU has two scalable configurations:

	Link 3000	Link 150
Wireless phones	3200	64
Base stations	1000	16
Simultaneous calls	1600	32
Coverage (in million sq. ft.)	100	1.5

The 3410 wireless telephone solution uses 902-928 MHz spread spectrum frequency hopping radio technology with a high level of integration with enterprise telephone switching to provide an advanced wireless telephone system.

3606 wireless VoIP telephone

The 3606 wireless VoIP telephone solution is an IEEE 802.11b standards-based, 2.4 GHz wireless LAN telephone system. Using voice over IP (VoIP) technology, the 3606 wireless VoIP telephone solution provides high quality mobile voice communications throughout the workplace.

The 3606 wireless VoIP telephone solution requires one DCP port per handset and emulates an 8410D desk telephone.

The 3606 wireless VoIP telephone solution requires four components:

- 3606 wireless telephones
- a SpectraLink Voice Priority (SVP) server
- telephony gateways
- an 802.11b wireless LAN with SVP-enabled access points (such as the Avaya AP-1, AP-2, or AP-3 SVP-enabled access point)

Avaya extension to cellular/OPS

Avaya extension to cellular and off-PBX stations (OPS) – see [“Off-PBX station \(OPS\)” on page 124](#) – provides users with the capability to have one administered phone that supports Avaya Communication Manager features for both an office phone and one outside phone. Extension to cellular/OPS allows users to receive and place office calls anywhere, any time. People calling into an office phone can reach users even if they are not in the office. Users could receive the call on their cell phone, for example. This added flexibility also allows them to use certain Communication Manager features from a phone that is outside the phone network.

Extension to cellular

Previous versions of extension to cellular allowed for office calls to be extended to a user’s cell phone. Also, calls from the cell phone would appear as if the call originated from the user’s office phone when calling another phone on the same call server. Certain features within Communication Manager are available from the cell phone. These features are still available.

In previous versions of extension to cellular, cell phones had to be administered as XMOBILE stations. This is no longer necessary with Communication Manager Release 2.0.

If you had administered extension to cellular in earlier releases of Communication Manager, you do not have to change the administration to continue using extension to cellular features. It still works. However, users would not have the full range of features that are now possible with extension to cellular/OPS.

Off-PBX station (OPS)

New with Avaya Communication Manager Release 2.0, the off-PBX station (OPS) application type is used to administer of a SIP phone. OPS cannot be disabled using the extension to cellular enable/disable feature button.

⇒ NOTE:

A 4602 SIP phone must register with the SIP proxy regardless of whether OPS is administered.

The extension to cellular/OPS application allows for many of the parameters used for the original extension to cellular application to be ported onto one of several DCP and IP station types. From a call processing perspective, extension to cellular/OPS is in fact dealing with a multi-function phone, whereas the previous extension to cellular implementation utilized one or two XMOBILE stations that behaved like analog station types.

What's new in extension to cellular/OPS

In addition to features in previous releases of Communication Manager and extension to cellular, extension to cellular/OPS enhancements for Release 2.0 include the following:

- The ability to support Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) phones.
- Simplified administration of extension to cellular/OPS.
- The ability for the administrator to map certain Communication Manager features to phone extensions. You just dial one of those extensions – called feature name extensions (FNE) – from your cell phone to activate a Communication Manager feature.
- An extension to cellular feature button that allows you to extend a call that is received at the office phone, and extend it to your cell phone.
- An extension to cellular feature button that allows you to exclude anyone from joining in on your conversation from your office phone.
- The ability to administer the number of call appearances that are allowed to be mapped to the cell phone or SIP phone.

The extension to cellular feature buttons are available on office phones that support administrable feature buttons. This includes the feature button to enable and disable cell phones. You administer the buttons onto the office phone – the phone to which the extension to cellular is linked.



NOTE:

SIP-enabled phones cannot be enabled or disabled using a feature button.

E911 ELIN for IP wired extensions

This feature automates the process of assigning an emergency location information number (ELIN) through an IP subnetwork (“subnet”) during a 911 call. The ELIN is then sent over either CAMA or ISDN PRI trunks to the emergency services network when 911 is dialed. This feature properly identifies locations of wired IP telephones that call an emergency number from anywhere on a campus or location.



NOTE:

This feature depends upon the customer having subnets that correspond to geographical areas.

This feature works for both types of IP endpoints:

- H.323
- SIP

A caller who needs emergency assistance dials a Universal Emergency Number — for example, 911 in the United States, 000 in Australia, and 112 in the European community. The call routes through a local Central Office, through an emergency tandem office, to the appropriate Public Safety Answer Point (PSAP). The PSAP answers the call.

A typical tandem office can route the call to a PSAP within at most four surrounding areas. (In the US, that translates to four surrounding area codes.) If the PSAP that receives the call is not the correct one to handle the emergency, the PSAP might be able to transfer the call to the correct PSAP. Such transfers can only occur between geographically adjacent or nearby PSAPs.

Each PSAP usually covers one city or one rural county. At the PSAP, emergency operators determine the nature of the emergency and contact the appropriate agency: police, fire, ambulance, etc. A single PSAP is usually responsible for an area covering several independent police and fire departments in the United States.

With Enhanced 911 (E911), the system might send to the emergency services network the Calling Party Number (CPN) with the call over Centralized Automatic Message Accounting (CAMA) trunks or through the Calling Number IE over ISDN trunks. A mux at the PSAP uses the CPN to lookup the caller's documented street address location from the Automatic Location Information (ALI) database. The ALI database is usually owned and managed by Local Exchange Carriers. Many enterprise customers choose to contract with a third party to update the ALI database for them.

This depends on the assumption that a CPN always corresponds to the street address that the system owner arranged to have administered into the ALI database. This assumption is not always true.

- Users who have H.323 IP telephones can move them without notifying the system administrator.
- Users who have SIP IP telephones can use the same extension number simultaneously at several different telephones.

Without this feature, if these users dial 911, the emergency response personnel might go to the wrong physical location. With this feature, the emergency response personnel can now go to the correct physical location. In addition, emergency response personnel can now go to the correct physical location if a 911 emergency call comes from a bridged call appearance.

Personal Station Access (PSA)

This feature allows you to transfer your telephone station preferences and permissions to any other compatible telephone. This includes the definition of telephone buttons, abbreviated dial lists, and class of service, and class of restrictions permissions. It can be used on-site or off-site (with DEFINITY[®] Extender).

PSA has several telecommuting applications. For example, several telecommuting employees can share the same office on different days of the week. The employees can easily and remotely make the shared telephone “theirs” for the day. Remote use requires DEFINITY[®] Extender.

Don't answer reason code (for PSA-disassociated stations)

PSA uses Administration Without Hardware (AWOH), a feature that allows the switch administrator to assign a station without specifying a physical port — for example, use “X” as the port. If a station is disassociated, it means that it is not currently mapped to a particular physical endpoint such as a digital telephone. If a caller dials into an station extension that is currently disassociated, they are provided a message that indicates “Don't answer” instead of “Busy”.

Name/number permanent display

When a person uses PSA to associate their extension with a station, a display appears on the station indicating their name and extension number. This information is displayed until the user disassociates their extension from the station using the PSA-associate feature access code.

Terminal Translation Initialization (TTI)

Communication Manager provides Terminal Translation Initialization (TTI), a feature that works with Administration Without Hardware (AWOH). TTI associates the terminal translation data with a specific port location through the entry of a special feature-access code, a TTI security code, and an extension number from a terminal that is connected to a wired (but untranslated) jack.

TransTalk 9000 digital wireless system

The TransTalk 9000 is a single-zone or dual-zone, in-building wireless system that provides a mobility solution on Communication Manager-based systems. It delivers the benefits and accessibility of a wireless phone with all the power and functionality of a wired desk telephone.

X-station mobility

X-station mobility allows remote users to access switch features. That is, X-station mobility allows certain OEM wireless telephones remoted over a PRI trunk interface to be controlled by Communication Manager as if the telephones were directly connected to the switch.

The telephones are administered to be of the type XMOBILE and have additional administration information on the station form that assigns the capabilities of a remote station to the associated PRI trunk group. The wireless telephones thus have access to such features as call-associated display, bridging, message waiting, call redirection, and so forth.

X-station mobility is currently used for non-cellular wireless offers (DECT and PHS) in EMEA and APAC regions, and the Extension to Cellular extension to cellular offer globally.

Private networking and connectivity

Communication device support

Circuit switched

Analog 6200-series

See [“6200-series analog telephones” on page 91.](#)

Digital telephones

2420 DCP telephones

See [“2420 DCP telephones” on page 87.](#)

Personalized labels

See [“Personalized labels for the abbreviated dialing \(AD\) system list” on page 88.](#)

Voice mail retrieval button

See [“Voice mail retrieval button” on page 88.](#)

6400-series telephones

See [“6400-series DCP telephones” on page 91.](#)

6400 tip/ring interface module

See [“6400 tip/ring interface module” on page 91.](#)

8400-series telephones

See [“8400-series telephones” on page 92.](#)

Internet Protocol (IP)

4600-series IP telephones

See [“4600-series IP telephones” on page 89.](#)

Katakana character set

See [“Katakana character set” on page 90.](#)

Voice mail retrieval button

See [“Voice mail retrieval button” on page 88.](#)

Avaya IP Agent

See [“Avaya IP Agent” on page 92.](#)

Avaya IP Softphone

See [“Avaya IP Softphone” on page 92.](#)

IP Softphone and IP Agent — RoadWarrior mode

See [“IP Softphone and IP Agent — RoadWarrior mode” on page 93.](#)

IP Softphone and IP Agent — Shared Control mode

See [“IP Softphone and IP Agent — Shared Control mode” on page 93.](#)

IP Softphone and IP Agent — Telecommuter mode

See [“IP Softphone and IP Agent — Telecommuter mode” on page 94.](#)

Wireless

Communication Manager supports wireless devices. For specific information, see [“Mobility” on page 121.](#)

3410 wireless telephone

See [“3410 wireless telephone” on page 122.](#)

3606 wireless VoIP telephone

See [“3606 wireless VoIP telephone” on page 123.](#)

Port network and gateway connectivity

Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM)

The Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM) switch is a replacement option for the CSS or the direct-connect switch. Several Avaya ATM switch types can provide Communication Manager port network connectivity. Non-Avaya ATM switches that comply with the ATM standards set by the European Union can also provide Communication Manager port network connectivity.

ATM WAN Spare Processor (WSP) Manager

See [“ATM WAN Spare Processor \(WSP\) Manager” on page 217.](#)

Port Network Connectivity (ATM-PNC)

ATM Port Network Connectivity (ATM-PNC) provides an alternative to the Center Stage Switch (CSS) configurations for connecting the Processor Port Network (PPN) to one or more Expansion Port Networks (EPN). ATM-PNC replaces the CSS in a DEFINITY R8r and later network with an ATM switch or network. ATM-PNC is available with all three Communication Manager reliability options — standard, high, and critical. In addition, it offers ATM-PNC duplication.

ATM-PNC integrates delivery of voice, video, and data via ATM over a converged large-bandwidth network, providing reduced infrastructure cost and improved network manageability. ATM-PNC uses standards-based open interfaces that can be provisioned with either new or existing systems running Communication Manager.

Port Network Connectivity (ATM-PNC) over WAN

ATM-PNC over a public Wide Area Network (WAN) represents an environment where the customer uses a service provider's ATM network between privately-owned ATM switches. The customer does not control the ATM switches in the network, including traffic policing policies and product quality.

Using a public WAN, Permanent Virtual Paths (PVP) may be set up between customer-owned ATM switches similar to the dedicated circuits in a private WAN. However, ATM cell processing occurs in a public WAN so the customer is dependent on ATM switches owned and managed by the service provider.

Switched Virtual Circuits (SVC) use the ATM protocol to transmit voice-like applications over ATM networks. The advantage of the SVC solution is that Communication Manager can dynamically signal the ATM network to provide more bandwidth as needed to handle peaks in the call traffic. If the ATM network cannot handle the additional traffic, calls will be denied.

WAN Spare Processor (WSP)

An ATM WAN Spare Processor (WSP) provides a disaster recovery option for a media gateway G3r expansion port networks deployed over an ATM WAN.

An ATM WSP acts as a PPN in the event of a catastrophic failure in the network. The ATM WSP continually monitors a path to the PPN to determine if it is on-line and reachable. The WSP functions as a PPN if the main PPN is not functional or is not communicating to one or more of the other EPNs. From one to 15 ATM WSPs can be placed in a Communication Manager ATM port network configuration to provide a backup arrangement of PPNs, thus maintaining the availability of the Communication Manager features and functions.

⇒ NOTE:

ATM WSPs cannot be used with a conventional CSS.

Circuit switched

Center Stage Switch (CSS)

Communication Manager supports CSS as a method to interface between the PPN and EPNs using circuit switched technology to carry the voice traffic.

Center Stage Switch (CSS) separation

S8700 Media Servers in an Avaya MCC1 or SCC1 Media Gateway configuration, with four or more Port Networks (PN), use a Center Stage Switch (CSS) to interconnect the PNs.

The Center Stage Switch (CSS) separation feature allows for the physical separation of redundant S8700 Media Servers, and their corresponding CSS, to improve their survivability. Media Servers and the CSS can be separated up to 6.2 miles (10 km), providing backup and survivability for a communications network in one or more remote locations.

Internet Protocol (IP)

H.248 media gateway control

Communication Manager uses standards based H.248 to perform call control to Avaya media gateways such as the G700. H.248 defines a framework of call control signaling between the intelligent media servers and multiple “unintelligent” media gateways.

IP Port Network Connectivity (PNC)

Communication Manager allows Control Channel Message Set (CCMS) messages to be packetized over IP LAN and WAN connections to control multiple port networks.

Link Recovery

IP calls must have an H.248 link between the Avaya G700 Media Gateway and the call controller. The H.248 link between an Avaya server running Communication Manager and the Avaya Media Gateway provides the signaling protocol for:

- Call setup
- Call control (user actions such as Hold, Conference, or Transfer)
- Call tear-down

If the link fails for any reason, the Link Recovery feature preserves any existing calls and attempts to re-establish the original link. If the gateway cannot reconnect to the original server, then Link Recovery automatically attempts to connect with alternate TN799DP (CLAN) circuit packs within the original server's configuration or to a Local Spare Processor (LSP).

Link Recovery does not attempt to recover or overcome any network failure that created the link outage. Link Recovery also does not diagnose or repair the network failure that caused the link outage.

Since there is no communication possible between the Media Gateway and call controller during a link outage, button depressions are not recognized, feature access does not work, and neither does any other type of call handling. In essence, the system is unresponsive to any stimuli until the H.248 link is restored. This might be the only indication that a Link Recovery is in process.

 **CAUTION:**

If an administrator attempts to add a station (phone) to a gateway while that gateway is in Link Recovery, that station is not put into service when the gateway comes back. If this happens, perform a busyout/release command on that station when the gateway comes back into service.

Feature highlights:

- Call signaling channel failures are detected at a fast rate (in the order of 30 seconds, by default).
- The endpoint has an awareness about the primary and the alternate gatekeepers for the purpose of faster and less disruptive recovery from signaling channel failures.
- The endpoint attempts to re-establish the signaling channels with the primary gatekeeper while preserving an existing call.
- An IP endpoint's registration (while it is recovering from a signaling failure) can be accepted while preserving that endpoint's existing call(s).
- The customer can administer the endpoint recovery parameters (such as timers and gatekeepers).

In order for IP endpoints to take advantage of this feature, a customer's firmware or application software must be updated with the new algorithm that supports the resiliency feature. IP endpoints include IP telephones and IP softphones. However, since the feature provides backward compatibility, it is not mandatory that existing IP endpoints be upgraded.

Separation of Bearer and Signaling

The Separation of Bearer and Signaling (SBS) feature provides a low cost virtual private network with high voice quality for customers who cannot afford private leased lines. SBS provides a DCS+ VPN replacement for those customers needing Dial Plan Expansion (DPE) functionality.

⇒ NOTE:

DCS does not work with six-digit or seven-digit dial plans. Although QSIG does work with six-digit and seven-digit dial plans, QSIG does not work over VPNs.

The SBS feature supports:

- QSIG private networking signaling over a low cost IP network
- Voice (bearer) calls over public switched network
- Association between QSIG feature signaling information and each voice call

You must always use AAR/ARS/UDP to originate an SBS call. You cannot use a Trunk Access Code / Dial Access Code to originate an SBS call.

Proper administration and configuration is required for SBS calls to work correctly. This includes:

- Fields in the `SYSTEM-PARAMETERS FEATURES` form, a field on the `TRUNK GROUP` form, and a `Station` type called an `SBS Extension` (an extension number without hardware assigned to it that is used to associate the separate bearer and signaling calls).
- Customers must allocate a sufficient number of SBS extensions based on expected SBS traffic volume. The same applies to SBS trunk group members.
- Each administered SBS extension must correspond to a DID/DDI number obtained from a local service provider.

⇒ NOTE:

Obtaining a DID/DDI number for each SBS extension is not necessary if the Feature Plus Pseudo DID feature is available.

- In remote office configurations or other remote gateway configurations with limited direct network access, these DID/DDI numbers should be obtained from a service provider that is local to the controlling gateway server, not local to the remote office/gateway. This eliminates excessive traffic through the remote office/gateway to its controlling gateway server.

- The ISDN PUBLIC-UNKNOWN NUMBERING form must be correctly administered to map every SBS extension to the corresponding national public network complete number (that is, the DID/DDI number). This public form is used to develop the complete number even if the incoming SBS trunk group numbering format is administered for private numbering.

Trunk connectivity

Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM)

See [“Asynchronous Transfer Mode \(ATM\)” on page 131.](#)

Circuit Emulation Service (ATM-CES)

ATM-circuit emulation service (ATM-CES) lets Communication Manager emulate ISDN-PRI trunks on an ATM facility. These virtual trunks can serve as integrated access, tandem, or tie trunks.

ATM-CES trunk emulation maximizes port network capacities by consolidating trunking. For example, the CES interface can define up to eight virtual circuits for tie-line connectivity, consolidating onto one circuit card network connectivity that usually requires multiple circuit packs. ATM-CES is available on all platforms (r, si, and csi).

CMS measurement of ATM

See [“CMS measurement of ATM” on page 69.](#)

Circuit switched

DS1 trunk service

See [“DS1 trunk service” on page 148.](#)

Echo cancellation — with UDS1 circuit pack

See [“Echo cancellation — with UDS1 circuit pack” on page 148.](#)

E1

See [“E1” on page 148.](#)

T1

See [“T1” on page 148](#).

Internet Protocol (IP)

H.323 trunk

A TN802B in MedPro mode or a TN2302AP IP interface enables H.323 trunk service using IP connectivity between two systems running Communication Manager. The H.323 trunk groups can be configured as system-specific tie trunks, generic tie trunks, or direct-inward-dial (DID) public trunks. In addition, the H.323 trunks support ISDN features such as QSIG and BSR.

IP loss groups

A primary reason to accomplish a loss plan for voice communication systems is the desire to have the received speech and tone loudness at a comfortable listening level. This should be accomplished so that users can listen to each other without being concerned who or where the remote party is, or what kind of telephone equipment each may be using.

A connection with an end-to-end loss (called an Overall Loudness Rating) of 10 dB — which approximates a normal conversation between a talker and listener spaced one meter apart — provides a high degree of satisfaction for the majority of users. Therefore, voice communication standards for end-to-end loss are based on this number.

Communication Manager has now defined two additional loss groups for IP telephony. The purpose of these two loss groups is to set speech and tone loudness separately for IP connections. These loss groups use country-specific gateway loss plans.

The two IP loss groups are:

- Loss Group 18: IPtrunk — loss group for IP trunks (IP Carrier Medium)
- Loss group 19: IPphone — loss group for IP terminals (IP ports)

On an upgrade, if the default for an IP station loss plan is 2, and the IP trunk loss plan is 13, Communication Manager changes the defaults to 19 and 18 respectively.

IP trunks

IP trunk groups may be defined as a virtual private network's tie lines between systems or ITS-E servers running Communication Manager. Each IP trunk circuit pack provides a basic 12-port package that can be expanded up to a total of 30 ports. The number of ports that are defined will correspond to the total number of simultaneous calls transmitted over the IP trunk interface.

The benefits of IP trunk include a reduction in long distance voice and fax expenses, facilitating global communications, providing a full function network with data and voice convergence and optimizing networks by using the available network resources.

IP trunking is a good choice for basic, corporate voice and fax communications, where cost is a major concern. IP trunk calls travel over a company's intranet rather than the public telephone network. So, for the most common types of internal corporate communications, IP trunks offer considerable savings.

IP trunking is usually not a good choice for applications where calls have to be routed to multiple destinations (as in most conferencing applications) or to a voice messaging system. IP trunk calls are compressed to save network bandwidth. Repeated compression and decompression results in a loss of data at each stage and degrades the final quality of the signal.

The maximum number of compression cycles acceptable on a call is three, and three compression cycles can compromise voice quality. Normal corporate voice or fax calls typically go through fewer than three compression cycles. However, multipoint conference calls and most voice messaging systems add too many compression cycles for acceptable quality.

Session Initiation Protocol (SIP)

Session Initiation Protocol (SIP) is a signalling protocol used for establishing sessions in an IP network.

SIP Instant Messaging and Presence (IMPress)

Instant Messaging and Presence (IMPress) adds a leading edge set of features to current enterprise customers. Through SIP, enterprise customers can send text instant messages through an instant message client integrated with the Avaya IP Softphone.

A presence-enabled buddy list gives enterprise users information on when colleagues are available. The Instant Messaging and Presence offer includes a SIP proxy, registrar, and presence server, as well as an instant message gateway to the popular consumer instant messaging networks (such as AOL, MSN, and Yahoo).

SIP trunks

SIP trunking functionality allows a Linux server (S8300, S8500, or S8700) to function as a POTS gateway between traditional legacy endpoints (stations and trunks) and SIP endpoints. It also provides SIP to SIP routing. In the routing scenario, the server supports call routing similar to what a SIP proxy would provide.

SIP links can be secured using TLS to encrypt signaling, and use Digest Authentication to perform validation. When using TLS, the Media Encryption feature is also available to encrypt audio channels.

SIP trunking functionality:

- Provides access to less expensive local and long distance telephone services, plus other hosted services from SIP service providers
- Provides presence and availability information to members of the enterprise and authorized consumers outside the enterprise, including other enterprises and service providers
- Facilitates SIP-enabled converged communications applications within the enterprise, such as the Seamless Service Experience.

Allowing encryption of signaling and audio channel provides the customer with the option to provide a secure communications infrastructure. See [“Signaling encryption for SIP trunks” on page 192](#).

Trunk types and signaling

Auxiliary trunks

Auxiliary trunks connect devices in auxiliary cabinets with Communication Manager. Some of the features that are supported with this type of trunk are recorded announcements, telephone dictation service, malicious call trace, and loudspeaker paging.

Advanced Private Line Termination (APLT)

Provides access to and termination from CO (Central Office)-based private networks; namely, Common Control Switching Arrangements (CCSA) and Enhanced Private Switched Communications Service (EPSCS).

APLT trunks are physically the same as those used for analog tie trunks, where the trunk signaling is compatible with EPSCS and CCSA network switches. The outgoing APLT trunk repeats any number of digits to the private network as dialed. APLT trunks can tandem through the PBX from EPSCS network only; CCSA networks require an Attendant to complete the call.

Central Office (CO)

Central Office (CO) trunks connect Communication Manager to the local central office for incoming and outgoing calls.

Central Office (CO) support on G700 Media Gateway — Russia

See [“Central Office \(CO\) support on G700 Media Gateway” on page 105.](#)

Digital multiplexed interface

The digital multiplexed interface feature supports two signaling techniques: bit-oriented signaling and message-oriented signaling for direct connection to host computers.

Digital multiplexed interface offers two major advantages:

- digital multiplexed interface delivers a standard, single-port interface for linking host computers internally and externally through a T1 carrier.
- Since it is compatible with ISDN standards and is licensed to numerous equipment manufacturers, digital multiplexed interface promotes multi-vendor connectivity.

Communication Manager supports two versions of digital multiplexed interface, each differing in the way information is carried over the 24th channel:

- Bit-oriented signaling
- Message-oriented signaling

Bit-oriented signalling

Digital multiplexed interface bit-oriented signalling carries framing and alarm data and signalling information for connections to host computers and other vendor equipment.

Message-oriented signalling

Digital multiplexed interface message-oriented signalling, fully compatible with ISDN-PRI, uses the same message-oriented signalling format — link access procedure on the D-channel — as ISDN-PRI for control and signalling. These signalling capabilities extend the advantages of digital multiplexed interface message-oriented signalling multiplexed communications to the public ISDN network.

Direct Inward Dialing (DID)

Direct Inward Dialing (DID) trunks connect Communication Manager to the local central office for incoming calls dialed directly to stations without attendant assistance.

Direct Inward/Outward Dialing (DIOD)

Traditionally, Central Office (CO) trunks and Direct Inward Dialing (DID) trunks interface a PBX with a central office. A CO trunk services outgoing calls and accepts incoming calls that are terminated at the attendant. A DID trunk is used for calls that need to be terminated without an attendant interaction.

E&M signaling — continuous and pulsed

See [“E&M signaling — continuous and pulsed” on page 106.](#)

E911 CAMA trunk group

This form administers the Centralized Automatic Message Accounting (CAMA) trunks and provides Caller Emergency Service Identification (CESID) information to the local community’s enhanced 911 system through the local central office.

E911 ELIN for IP wired extensions

See [“E911 ELIN for IP wired extensions” on page 125.](#)

Foreign Exchange (FX)

Foreign Exchange (FX) trunks connect Communication Manager to a Central Office other than the local one.

ISDN trunks

Gives you access to a variety of public and private network services and facilities. The ISDN standard consists of layers 1, 2, and 3 of the Open System Interconnect (OSI) model. Systems running Communication Manager can be connected to an ISDN using standard frame formats: Basic Rate Interface (BRI) and the Primary Rate Interface (PRI).

An ISDN provides end-to-end digital connectivity and uses a high-speed interface that provides service-independent access to switched services. Through internationally accepted standard interfaces, an ISDN provides circuit or packet-switched connectivity within a network and can link to other ISDN supported interfaces to provide national and international digital connectivity.

Automatic Termination Endpoint Identifier (TEI)

The user side will support automatic TEI assignment by the network. Both fixed and automatic TEI assignment will be supported on the network side.

Call-by-call service selection

Enables a single ISDN-PRI trunk group to carry calls to a variety of services, rather than requiring each trunk group to be dedicated to a specific service. It allows you to set up various voice and data services and features for a particular call.

ETSI functionality

The full set of ETSI public-network and private-network ISDN features is officially supported. This includes Look-Ahead Interflow (LAI), look-ahead routing, and usage allocation.

Also included is all QSIG supplementary services, such as:

- Name identification
- Call diversion (including rerouting)
- Call transfer
- Path replacement

ETSI functionality does not include:

- DCS
- Non-facility associated signaling
- D-channel backup
- Wideband signaling

Facility and non-facility associated signaling

Facility and non-facility associated signaling allows an ISDN-PRI DS1/E1 interface D-channel to carry signaling information for B-channels (voice or data). D-Channel Backup can also be administered to increase system reliability.

Feature plus

Feature plus enables those users without DID service to direct dial users on a remote PBX through the public network. ISDN feature plus eliminates the need for attendant intervention for those without DID capabilities.

ISDN-Basic Rate Interface (ISDN-BRI)

Enables connection of the system to equipment or endpoints that support an Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN) by using a standard format called the Basic Rate Interface (BRI). This feature is a 192-Kbps interface that carries two 64-Kbps B-channels and one 16-Kbps D-channel.

ISDN is a global access standard that uses a layered protocol. It eliminates the need for multiple, separate access arrangements for voice, data, facsimile, and video services and networks. Using the same pair of wires that carry simple telephone calls, ISDN can deliver voice, data, and video services in a digital format.

The ISDN-BRI Trunk circuit pack allows Communication Manager to support the T interface and the S/T interface as defined by ISDN standards (ITU-T recommendation I.411). The circuit pack provides eight ports to the network and supports two B channels and one D channel.

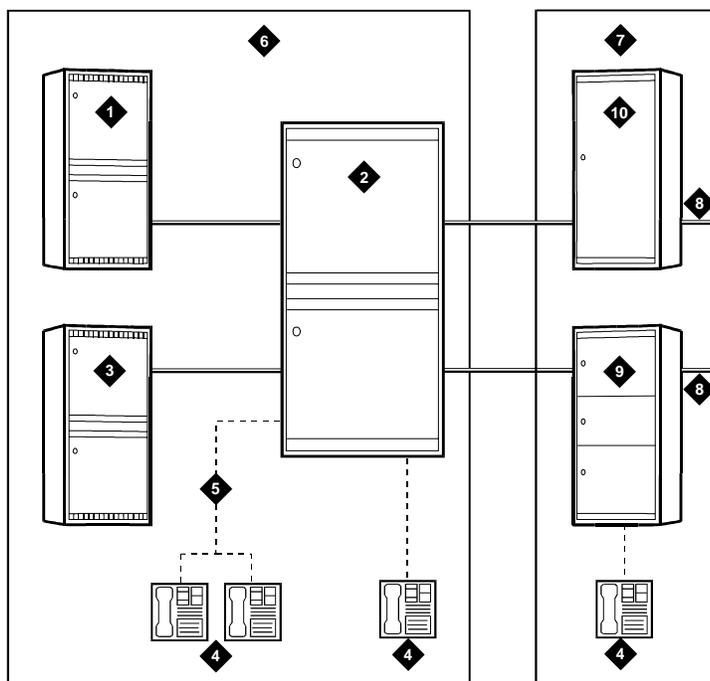
The ISDN-BRI Trunk provides the following advantages:

- Provides an inexpensive way to connect to ISDN services provided by the network provider
- Meets almost all ETSI Country protocol requirements
- Supports essential (not supplementary) ISDN services

BRI trunks support public-network access outside the U.S. on point-to-midpoint connections, with the restriction that Communication Manager must not be configured in a passive bus arrangement with other BRI endpoints. ISDN-BRI trunks can be used as inter-PBX tie lines using the QSIG peer protocol.

See [Figure 4](#).

Figure 4. Communication Manager and ISDN



- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 System running Communication Manager | 6 Private ISDN (can be carried over ATM-CES) |
| 2 System running Communication Manager | 7 Public ISDN (can be carried over ATM-CES) |
| 3 System running Communication Manager | 8 Public and private networks |
| 4 Basic rate interface telephone | 9 Central office switch |
| 5 Passive bus | 10 Tandem switch |

Multiple subscriber number (MSN) - limited

The ISDN standard MSN feature lets customers assign multiple extension to a single BRI endpoint. The MSN feature works with BRI endpoints that allow the channel ID IE to be encoded as “preferred.”

NT interface on TN556C

Communication Manager supports the NT (network) side of the T interface using the TN556C circuit pack. This gives the switch full tie trunk capability using BRI trunks. Communication Manager supports leased BRI connections through the public network, with a TN2185 on each end of the leased connection. Communication Manager will not, however, allow customers to administer both endpoints and trunks on the same TN556C circuit pack.

Presentation restriction

Restricts the display of calling/connected numbers over ISDN trunks. ISDN trunk groups can be administered to control the display of calling/connected numbers. Each trunk group can be administered to display “presentation restricted,” “number no available due to networking,” or an administered text string instead of the calling/connected number.

Wideband switching

Provides the ability to dedicate two or more ISDN B-channels or DSO endpoints for applications that require large bandwidth. Certain applications, such as video conferencing and high-speed data transmission, require extra bandwidth and it becomes necessary to put several ISDN-PRI narrowband channels into one wideband channel to accommodate the needs of these applications.

This feature supports both European and North American standards.

Multi-Frequency Packet (MFP) signaling — Russia

See [“Multi-Frequency Packet \(MFP\) signaling” on page 105.](#)

National private networking support — Japan

See [“National private networking support” on page 105.](#)

Personal Central Office Line (PCOL)

Provides a dedicated trunk circuit between multi-appearance telephones and a CO or other switch via the network.

Release Link Trunks (RLT)

Release Link Trunks (RLT) are used between switch locations to provide centralized attendant service or automatic call distribution group availability.

Remote access trunks

Tie trunks

Tie trunks carry communications between Communication Manager and other switches in a private network. Several types of trunks can be used, depending on the type of private network you establish.

Timed automatic disconnect for outgoing trunk calls

This feature provides the capability to automatically disconnect an outgoing trunk call after an administrable amount of time. The amount of time that can elapse before the trunk is dropped can be specified, and can vary between 2 and 999 minutes. If the timer field is blank (the default value), the feature is disabled and the trunk will not be automatically disconnected.

Timed call disconnection applies to all outgoing trunk calls initiated by a party belonging to a specified Class of Restriction (COR).

The outgoing trunk disconnect timer only affects outgoing public network trunks (CO, DIOD, FX, WATS, and ISDN public-network).

NOTE:

The outgoing trunk disconnect timer should be administered to a value large enough to provide users with adequate response time.

The outgoing trunk disconnect timer does not apply to outgoing trunk calls that are emergency or service calls. Specifically, the outgoing trunk disconnect timer does not apply to calls with ARS call types `alrt`, `emer`, `nsvc`, `op`, `svcl`, `svfl`, `svct`, or `svft`.

The outgoing trunk disconnect timer starts after the outgoing trunk call is answered. The outgoing trunk call is considered answered if:

- the network provides an answer supervision line signal
- an ISDN CONNect message is received

- the Answer Supervision Timeout timer expires
- the call classifier classifies the call as answered
- the Outgoing End of Dial Timer expires

Prior to disconnecting the trunk, warning tones are applied to all parties on the call. The first warning tone occurs when one minute remains on the call. The second warning tone occurs when 30 seconds remain on the call.

Wide Area Telecommunications Service (WATS)

Wide Area Telecommunications Service (WATS) trunks allow you to place long-distance outgoing voice-grade calls to telephones in defined service areas. The calls are priced according to distance in the service area, length of the call, time of day, and the day of the week.

Public networking and connectivity

Caller ID (ICLID) on analog trunks

Caller ID on analog trunks allows the system to accept calling name information from a Local Exchange Carrier (LEC) network that supports the Bellcore calling name specification. The system can send calling name information in the format if Bellcore calling name ID is administered.

Caller ID (ICLID) on digital trunks

In the United States, the user's telephone displays calling party information (if the telephone is a display telephone). Name and calling number are available from the US central offices.

This feature may be used in countries that comply with either US. The display of name and number will work with all Communication Manager digital telephones (DCP and BRI) equipped with a 40-character or a 32-character alphanumeric display.

DS1 trunk service

Bit-oriented signaling that multiplexes 24 channels into a single 1.544-Mbps stream. DS1 can be used for voice or voice-grade data and for data-transmission protocols. E1 trunk service is bit-oriented signaling that multiplexes 32 channels into a single 2.048-Mbps stream. Both DS1 and E1 provide a digital interface for trunk groups. Digital Service 1 (DS1) trunks can be used to provide T1 or ISDN Primary Rate Interface (PRI) service.

Echo cancellation — with UDS1 circuit pack

The universal DS-1 (UDS1) circuit pack (TN464GP/TN2464BP) available for all Communication Manager platforms has echo cancellation circuitry. The echo cancellation capability of the circuit pack is intended only for channels supporting voice communication. It is not desirable to provide echo cancellation over channels supporting data communication.

The TN464GP/TN2464BP is intended for Communication Manager customers who are likely to encounter echo over circuits connected to the public network. The occurrence of echo is likely if Communication Manager is configured for complex services such as ATM or IP. In addition, echo is likely to occur if Communication Manager interfaces to local service providers who do not routinely install echo cancellation equipment in all their circuits.

E1

Communication Manager also supports E1 connections. T1/E1 access and conversion allows simultaneous connection to both T1 (1.544 Mbps) and E1 (2.048 Mbps) facilities (using separate circuit packs).

T1

When planning your networking requirements, one of the options you should consider is multiplexing over digital services 1 (DS1) facilities.

Flexible billing

See [“Flexible billing” on page 58](#).

Local exchange trunks

Local exchange trunks connect Communication Manager to a central office. The following local exchange trunks are some of the types available.

800-service trunks

800-service trunks let your business pay the charges for inbound long-distance calls so that callers can reach you toll-free.

Central Office (CO) trunks

See [“Central Office \(CO\)” on page 140.](#)

Digital Service 1 (DS1) trunks

See [“DS1 trunk service” on page 148.](#)

Direct Inward Dialing (DID) trunks

See [“Direct Inward Dialing \(DID\)” on page 141.](#)

Direct Inward/Outward Dialing (DIOD) trunks

See [“Direct Inward/Outward Dialing \(DIOD\)” on page 141.](#)

Foreign Exchange (FX) trunks

See [“Foreign Exchange \(FX\)” on page 141.](#)

Wide Area Telecommunications Service (WATS)

See [“Wide Area Telecommunications Service \(WATS\)” on page 147.](#)

Intelligent networking

Avaya VoIP Monitoring Manager (VMON)

See [“Avaya VoIP Monitoring Manager \(VMON\)” on page 218.](#)

Distributed Communications System (DCS) protocol

The Distributed Communications System (DCS) protocol allows you to configure two or more switches as if they were a single, large system. DCS provides attendant and voice-terminal features between these switch locations. DCS simplifies dialing procedures and allows transparent use of some of the Communication Manager features. (Feature transparency means that features are available to all users on DCS regardless of the switch location.) For more information, also see [“Centralized Attendant Service \(CAS\)” on page 50](#) and [“Inter-PBX attendant calls” on page 47](#).

Attendant with DCS

Direct trunk group selection

See [“Direct trunk group selection” on page 46](#).

Display

See [“Display” on page 50](#).

DCS automatic circuit assurance

See [“DCS automatic circuit assurance” on page 208](#).

DCS over ISDN-PRI D-channel (DCS+)

Enhances DCS by allowing access to the public network for DCS connections between DCS switch nodes. With this feature (also known as DCS Plus or DCS+), DCS features are no longer restricted to private facilities. The ISDN-PRI B-channel is used for voice communications, and the ISDN-PRI D-channel is used to transport DCS control information.

DCS protocol — Italy

See [“Distributed Communications Systems \(DCS\) protocol” on page 104](#).

DCS with reroute

Allows a DCS call to be rerouted over a different path if the switch finds a better quality and lower cost route. This feature allows for rerouting the call after a transfer or rerouting during a call. DCS with reroute is similar to the rerouting capabilities used with QSIG.

QSIG/DCS voice mail interworking

See [“QSIG/DCS voice mail interworking” on page 117](#).

Electronic Tandem Network (ETN)

In an Electronic Tandem Network (ETN) — also known as Private Network Access (PNA) — Communication Manager provides a variety of features on a network-wide basis. It allows calls to other systems in a private network. These calls do not use the public network. Instead, they are routed over your dedicated facilities.

Automatic alternate conditional routing

You can control the routing of particular calls using conditional routing. For example, you can limit the number of communications satellite hops (communications satellite links used as trunks) in any end-to-end private network routing pattern. Limiting the number of satellite hops may be desirable for controlling transmission quality or call delay in both voice and data calls.

Trunk signaling and error recovery

The reliability of electronic tandem network calls is improved by allowing a trunk call to be retried on another circuit when signaling failures occur.

- **tandem switch:** A switch within an ETN that provides the logic to determine the best route for a network call, possibly modifies the digits outpulsed, and allows or denies certain calls to certain users.
- **tandem through:** The switched connection of an incoming trunk to an outgoing trunk without human intervention.
- **Tandem Tie-Trunk Network (TTTN):** A private network that interconnects several customer switching systems.

See also, [“Port Network Connectivity \(ATM-PNC\)” on page 131](#).

Extension number portability

When employees move within the network, they can retain their extension numbers. The ability to keep extension numbers, and even electronic tandem network and direct inward dialed numbers, when moving to other locations within the company eliminates missed calls and saves valuable time.

Internet Protocol (IP)

The capabilities and applications of Communication Manager are extended using IP. Communication Manager IP supports audio/voice over a LAN or WAN, and it ensures that remote workers have access to communication system features from their PCs. Communication Manager also provides standards based control between media server and media gateways allowing communications infrastructure to be distributed to the edge of the network.

The Communication Manager IP engine offers features that enables users to increase the quality of voice communications. The Quality of Service (QoS) feature enables users to administer and download the differentiated services type-of-service value to optimize voice quality. The QoS feature reduces latency by implementing buffers in the audio-processing board, and assists some routers in prioritizing audio traffic.

Communication Manager IP also includes hairpin and IP-IP direct connections, two features that make voice communications more efficient. These features increase the efficiency of voice communications by reducing both per port costs and IP bandwidth usage.

IP solutions supports trunks, IP communications devices, IP port networks, and IP control for media gateways. IP solutions is implemented using various IP-media processor circuit packs inside the servers or the Avaya media gateways. The IP media processors provides H.323 trunk connections and H.323 voice processing for IP telephones. The features that use the IP media processor also require the CLAN circuit pack or native processor ethernet connectivity.

The IP LAN can also connect through VPN and WAN facilities to extend the customer IP network across geographically disparate locations. Distributed communication services (DCS+), or QSIG services, can extend feature transparency, centralized voice mail, centralized attendant service, call center applications, and enhanced call routing across IP trunks.

NOTE:

To maximize voice quality using IP, you must consider both your hardware and network configurations. For example, with IP softphones, you can send the audio over traditional circuit switch lines, providing high quality voice, or over IP using LAN connections. The IP network must be a switched ethernet infrastructure and have the appropriate engineering to accommodate bandwidth, latency and packet loss requirements to effectively provide for real-time voice over IP traffic.

Alternate gatekeeper and registration addresses

When an IP endpoint (including softphones, IP phones, and Avaya R300) registers with the switch, the switch sends back an IP registration address. The switch sends a different IP address for each registration according to a cyclic algorithm.

If registration with the original CLAN circuit pack IP address is successful, the switch sends back the IP addresses of all the CLAN circuit packs in one network region, not including interconnected regions. These CLAN addresses are called gatekeeper addresses. These addresses can also be used if the call signaling on the original CLAN circuit pack fails.

⇒ NOTE:

On switches using the LAN region based on IP Address feature, it's likely that the network region number assigned to an IP phone would be different from the network region number of the TN799 that the phone is registering through. That difference would mean the list of TN799 addresses in the same network region as the IP phone would be empty. The alternate gatekeeper feature would send a blank list to the IP phone.

To prevent that from happening, an IP terminal registers with Communication Manager. Communication Manager then sends to the endpoint the IP addresses of the CLANs in the same region as the terminal, followed by network regions interconnected with the network region of the terminal.

If the network connection to one CLAN circuit pack fails, the IP endpoint re-registers with a different CLAN. Alternate gatekeeper and registration addresses, and CLAN circuit pack load sharing, spread IP endpoint registration across more than one CLAN circuit pack, increasing performance and reliability.

Classless Interdomain Routing (CIDR)

CIDR is a redefinition of the subnet mask, allowing for the aggregation of contiguous classful networks under a single network definition. This allows for more efficient routing table management when administering IP address on Communication Manager.

Multiple network regions per CLAN

See [“Multiple network regions per CLAN” on page 182.](#)

Multiple location support for network regions

See [“Multiple location support for network regions” on page 179.](#)

Network regions

Network regions provide the administrative foundation on which Communication Manager features are allocated to IP endpoints. A network region is a collection of IP endpoints and switch IP interfaces interconnected by an IP network.

Endpoints that share network regions typically represent users with common interests. For example, a customer might have two separate small campuses in a large metropolitan area, interconnected by a WAN, and both served by the same server running Communication Manager. Communication Manager allows the customer to define a network region for each campus, and associate each of their CLAN and IP media processor circuit packs with these regions.

Quality of Service (QoS)

By employing a variety of Quality of Service (QoS) features, Communication Manager provides the best possible end-to-end audio experience when all or part of the audio path is carried over packet facilities. “Best” in this context is defined by the customer as represented by the system administrator, and represents a trade-off between audio reproduction quality, audio path delay (latency), audio loss, and network resource consumption.

802.1p/Q

IEEE standard 802.1Q and 802.1p provide the means to specify both a Virtual LAN (VLAN) and a frame priority at layer 2 for use by LAN hubs, or bridges, that can do routing based on MAC addresses. 802.1p/Q provides for 8 levels of priority (3 bits) and a large number (12 bits) of VLAN identifiers. The VLAN identifier at layer 2 permits segregation of traffic to reduce traffic on individual links. Because 802.1p operates at the MAC layer, its presence may vary from LAN segment to LAN segment within a single network region. Flexibility requires that 802.1p/Q options be administered individually for each network interface.

Camp-on/Busy-out

A camp-on/busy-out command is commonly used by system technicians to busy-out system resources that need maintenance or repair. Without it, all active calls using those resources are indiscriminately dropped if the resource is physically removed from the system. This disruptive action causes problems for customers, especially when a large number of calls are torn down.

The Camp-on/Busy-out feature for Prowler, MedPRO, and Cruiser adds the ability to remove idle VoIP resources from the system’s pool of available VoIP resources.



NOTE:

This feature is not supported by the G700 or G350 Media Gateway platforms.

The Camp-on/Busy-out feature enables the user to select the media processor to be busied-out while the media processor is still in service. After a call ends that was using resources within the specified media processor, the idled resource is removed from the system's pool of available resources. Once all of the media processor's resources are in a "busy-out" state, the associated board can be removed from the system without disrupting active calls.

Call Admission Control (CAC) bandwidth management

In order to ensure Quality of Service for Voice over IP calls, there is a need to limit overall VoIP traffic on WAN links. The Call Admission Control (CAC) Bandwidth Management feature of Communication Manager allows the customer to specify a VoIP bandwidth limit between any pair of IP network regions. The feature then denies calls that need to be carried over the WAN link that exceed that bandwidth limit.

CLAN load balancing

CLAN load balancing is the process of registering IP endpoints to CLAN circuit packs (TN799x). Load balancing occurs among CLANs within a network region.

IP endpoint registration among CLAN circuit packs is done through an algorithm. This algorithm tracks the number of sockets being used per TN799x circuit pack, and registers IP endpoints to the TN799x with the most available (unused) sockets. This algorithm applies to H.248, H.323 signaling groups, H.323 stations, and SIP endpoints. Sockets used by adjuncts are not included in the socket count.

Codecs

A codec (coder/decoder) provides the means by which audio is compressed. A codec is typically used in VoIP. Codecs supported by Communication Manager include G.711, G.723, and G.729.

Differentiated services (DiffServ)

With the DiffServ option, the system administrator can administer (by region) and download, to the TN2302AP, the DiffServ Type-Of-Service (TOS) value. This allows data networking equipment to prioritize the audio stream at the IP level to promote voice quality. DiffServ makes use of the TOS octet in the existing IP version 4 header. As such, it may be set by information senders and used by IP (layer 3) routers within the network.

Dynamic jitter buffers

Propagation delay and jitter is caused when a human's voice is sampled, encoded, and packetized for transport over the IP network, but is received and decoded at different rates. Jitter buffers are used to buffer the audio output to smooth the conversions. Communication Manager provides dynamic jitter buffers to balance both delay of conversation and rapid bursts that may occur.

Integration with Cajun rules

Cajun rules provide a central repository for QoS parameters and allows comprehensive QoS management across routers, switches, and endpoints. QoS parameters and policies are assigned according to network regions on a network region and are distributed through enterprise directory gateway to Communication Manager and to routers and switching devices.

IP overload control

This enhancement more effectively manages processor occupancy overload situations. The enhancement applies selected overload mechanisms at a lower occupancy threshold in an effort to avoid more serious symptoms experienced at higher occupancy levels.

The IP overload control enhancement:

- fortifies the system against bursts of registration traffic
- provides a mechanism to alert the far-end to abstain from issuing registrations for some specified period of time
- records the event to maintain a history of potential performance problems
- optimizes the maximum number of simultaneous registrations the server can handle based on the available memory and CPU cycles
- reduces the frequency that a server might go into overload due to network problems

QoS for call control

Communication Manager allows QoS for the signaling packets coming from gatekeepers such as the CLAN by employing the same standards based DiffServ and 802.1p/Q schemes as with audio channels. This QoS services further improve the users VoIP audio experience.

QoS for VoIP

Communication Manager implements QoS through the selection of audio codec such as G.711, G.723 and G.729, and by requesting network prioritization through the layer 3 differentiated services (DiffServ) scheme, as well as the layer 2 IEEE 802.1p/Q prioritization. Diffserv and 802.1p/Q are supported on voice packets coming to/from the gateway, all the way down to the endpoints such as IP telephones. Dynamic jitter buffers are also used.

QoS to endpoints

Users can set operating parameters to optimize the audio performance, or quality of service (QoS), on calls made over your IP network. These parameters include the audio codec, network priority through DiffServ capability, and the IEEE 802.1p/Q MAC-layer prioritization and segregation.

Default QoS parameters are downloaded to the IP telephone R1.5 and the IP softphone R3 when the values are not provided by the endpoint installer or the user. Certain options can be set locally by the endpoints or through the gatekeeper. The endpoints receive the parameters when the endpoints register, and once they are registered, whenever the administered values of the QoS parameters are modified.

Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP)

Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP) is a QoS signaling protocol. RSVP provides a means of specifying the requirements of IP packet flow, and determining if the intervening network can provide the resources to protect that flow through a process called “admission control.”

RSVP protection of VoIP audio streams on WANs and other links that are susceptible to congestion can safeguard the quality of VoIP calls already in progress.

- IP phones or gateways request the network routers to reserve bandwidth.
- The routers act upon the request to allocate bandwidth according to the QoS request.
- When the bandwidth is reserved, the call is protected against other network traffic in a loaded or congested network, thereby ensuring good voice quality.

Administrators can now configure RSVP settings in Communication Manager. When the `RSVP enable` field in the `IP NETWORK REGION` form is set to ‘y’, the `RSVP Reservation Parameters` appear.

Shuffling and hairpinning

Shuffling and hairpinning can improve traffic handling performance and improve voice quality by more efficiently using both Communication Manager switching fabric by allocating, when possible, available IP network resources.

“Shuffling” means rerouting the audio channel connecting two IP endpoints. After shuffling, the audio which previously was carried in a mixed connection of IP signaling and TDM bus signaling, goes directly through the LAN or WAN between the two IP endpoints. Shuffling also can mean reversing this process if an endpoint requests a resource to support a feature, such as conferencing that requires the TDM bus.

“Hairpinning” means rerouting the audio channel connecting two IP endpoints so that the bearer (audio) packets are routed through the TN2302AP IP Media Processor board in IP format, without having to go through the IP to TDM conversion or traverse the TDM bus.

NAT with shuffling

Communication Manager allows IP endpoints to shuffle if they are behind a Network Address Translation (NAT) device in an IP network.

NOTE:

Network Address Translation (NAT) is a method to address the shortage of IP V4 addresses by allowing globally register IP addresses to be reused by native networks. A NAT device translates between translated and native IP addresses.

Communication Manager supports IP direct calls (a call that has been shuffled) between two IP endpoints that are translated through a NAT device.

This enhancement works with static one-to-one NAT. It does not facilitate Port Address Translation (PAT), also known as Network Address Port Translation (NAPT). This enhancement does not work with many-to-one NAT.

TTY

People with hearing or speech disabilities often rely on a device known as a TTY in order to communicate on telephone systems. The term “TTY” is an abbreviation for Teletypewriter. (The term “TDD” – Telecommunication Device for the Deaf – is also frequently used. The term TTY is generally preferred, however, because many people who use these devices are not deaf.)

TTY devices typically resemble small laptop computers, except that there is a one- or two-line alphanumeric display in place of the computer screen.

Connection to the telephone network is generally through an acoustic coupler into which the user places the telephone's handset, or through an analog RJ-11 tip/ring connections.

Reliable transmission of TTY signals is supported by Communication Manager. This complies with the requirements and guidelines outlined in United States accessibility-related laws. Those laws include:

- Titles II, III, and IV of the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) of 1990.
- Sections 251 and 255 of the Telecommunications Act of 1996.
- Section 508 of the Workforce Investment Act of 1998.

Communication Manager's TTY support is currently restricted to TTY devices that use the US standard TTY protocol. That protocol is specified by ANSI/TIA/EIA 825: "A 45.45 Baud FSK modem."

Important characteristics of this standard are:

- TTYs are silent when not transmitting — Unlike fax machines and computer modems, TTYs have no "handshake" procedure at the start of a call, nor do they have a carrier tone during the call. This approach has the advantage of permitting TTY tones, DTMF, and voice to be intermixed on the same call.

 **NOTE:**

A large percentage of people who use TTY devices intermix voice and typed TTY data on the same call. The most common usage is by people who are hard of hearing, but nevertheless able to speak clearly. These people often prefer to receive text on their TTY device and then speak in response. This process is referred to as Voice Carry Over (VCO).

- Operation is "half duplex" — TTY users must take turns transmitting and typically cannot interrupt each other. If two people try to type at the same time, their TTY devices might show no text at all or show text that is unrecognizable. Also, there is no automatic mechanism that lets TTY users know when a character they have correctly typed has been received incorrectly.
- Each TTY character consists of a sequence of seven individual tones — The first tone is always a "start tone" at 1800 Hz. This is followed by a series of five tones, at either 1400 or 1800 Hz, which specify the character. The final tone in the sequence is always a "stop tone" at 1400 Hz. The stop tone is a border that separates this character from the next.

The following types of systems support TTY communication:

- Analog telephones and trunks
- Digital telephones and trunks
- VoIP gateways
- Messaging systems
- Automated attendant systems
- IVR systems
- Wireless systems in which a TTY-compatible coder is used

As long as the user's TTY device supports the following, Communication Manager allows:

- Voice and TTY tones to be intermixed on the same call.
- DTMF and TTY (with or without voice) to be intermixed on the same call. This allows TTY users to access DTMF-based voice mail, auto-attendant, and IVR systems.
- The use of acoustically coupled and "direct connect" (RJ-11) TTY devices.

TTY over analog and digital trunks

Communication Manager supports TTY calls within a gateway or port network between two analog telephones. TTY calls from a gateway or port network over analog trunks or digital trunks is also supported.

TTY over Avaya IP trunks

Communication Manager supports calls over IP trunks, as well as Inter-Gateway Calls (IGC).

⇒ NOTE:

For this feature to work, both the sender (near end) and the receiver (far end) of a TTY call must each be connected to Avaya IP trunks. This feature will not work if either telephone is an IP telephone.

Variable length ping

Provides an enhancement to the ping command included in R7.1. This enhancement specifies a longer packet to be sent by ping and shows if a router or host has a problem fragmenting or integrating transferred packets.

Variable Length Subnet Mask (VLSM)

VLSM is a redefinition of the subnet mask, allowing for a more efficient allocation of IP addresses within a traditional classful block when administering IP address on Communication Manager.

QSIG

Basic

QSIG provides compliance to the International Standardization Organization (ISO) ISDN-PRI private-networking specifications. QSIG is defined by ISO as the worldwide standard for private networks. QSIG features are supported on BRI trunks.

QSIG is the generic name for a family of signaling protocols. The Q-reference point or interface is the logical point where signaling is passed between 2 peer entities in a private network. QSIG signaling can provide feature transparency in a single-vendor or multi-vendor environment.

QSIG provides call-related supplementary services. These are services that go beyond voice or data connectivity and number transport and display. Examples of supplementary services include name identification, call forwarding (diversion), and call transfer.

Call completion

Call completion utilizes the QSIG platform enhancement call independent signaling connections and is functionally equivalent to the Distributed Communications System (DCS) feature: auto-callback. The call completion feature includes a connection release method. The connection release method clears the Temporary Signaling Connection (TSC) after each phase of call-independent signaling and establishes a new TSC for each subsequent phase.

Call forwarding (diversion)

QSIG call forwarding (diversion) is based on the Communication Manager call forwarding feature. It extends the feature transparency aspects of call forwarding over a QSIG trunk:

- If QSIG call forwarding is activated, all calls are diverted immediately.
- If QSIG call forwarding with busy/don't answer is activated and a station is busy, a call is diverted immediately.

- If QSIG call forwarding with busy/don't answer is activated and a station is idle but the call is not answered, a call is diverted after a specified number of rings.

These features are activated either by dialing a Feature Access Code (FAC) or by pressing a button. See [“Call redirection” on page 229](#) for detailed descriptions of how to use these features.

Call Independent Signaling Connections (CISC)

Call Independent Signaling Connections (CISC) are used to pass QSIG supplementary service information that is independent of an active call between two QSIG compliant nodes. Implementation is based on the ISO standard for CISC. It is possible to determine the status of a QSIG TSC by using the “status signaling group” command on the SAT.

Call offer

This feature, on request from the calling-user (or on that user's behalf), enables a call to:

- Be offered to a busy called-user
- Wait for a busy called-user to accept the call when the necessary resources have become available

Call transfer

QSIG call transfer differs from the standard Communication Manager transfer feature in that additional call information is available for the connected parties after the transfer completes. However, the information is only sent for QSIG trunks. If one call is local to the transferring switch, that user receives the name of the party at the far end.

Called name ID

The QSIG called name feature presents the called party's name on the calling party's display while the call is ringing. It then reverts to “connected name” when answered.

Centralized Attendant Service (CAS)

Provides you with the capability to have all your attendants in one location, serving users in multiple locations. QSIG CAS does not utilize separate Release Link Trunks (RLT). This feature will not restrict calls from going out over non-QSIG trunks; however, the full functionality of the QSIG CAS will not be available.

Attendant display of Class of Restriction (COR)

While on a call, the attendant can press a “COR display” button to see the class of restriction of the user. The attendant will not block the transfer of the restricted line to the user. This feature is used for informational purposes only.

Attendant return call

If a call that is transferred by the attendant goes unanswered for a specified period of time, the call is returned to the attendant. Preferably the call will transfer back to the attendant who transferred the call.

Priority queue

QSIG MSI will pass more information to the main PBX. This information enables calls coming in from a QSIG CAS branch to be placed in the appropriate place in the queue, as if the call originated on the main PBX.

RLT emulation through a PRI

ISDN QSIG trunks will route calls from the branch PBX to the main PBX. You no longer have to specify a dedicated RLT network. The QSIG path replacement takes care of the trunk optimization. You have the flexibility to route calls to the main PBX.

Communication Manager/Octel QSIG integration

Communication Manager enables integration of Octel messaging servers through QSIG.

Leave Word Calling (LWC)

See [“Leave Word Calling \(LWC\)” on page 115](#).

Manufacturer-Specific Information (MSI)

QSIG handles non-standardized information that is specific to a particular PBX or network. This information is known as Manufacturer Specific Information (MSI). A manufacturer can define manufacturer-specific supplementary services operations after it has:

- Applied to a sponsoring and issuing organization (ECMA or European Computer Manufacturers Association in this case)
- Been assigned an organization identifier. This organization identifier is used as the root of the manufacturer-specific service-operation value.

All MSI operation values should be unique to that manufacturer.

Manufacturer-specific supplementary services can be created using specific operations encoded with the manufacturer's identifier. Communication Manager supports non-QSIG applications that transport information across QSIG networks in MSI. Applications have the same functionality over QSIG networks that they have over non-QSIG networks. Applications that use MSI include Centralized Attendant Service, Transfer to Audix, Best Service Routing, and QSIG VALU.

Message Waiting Indication (MWI)

The system indicates that a guest's phone has received one or more messages in their voice mailbox. An automatic message waiting lamp light at the called party's telephone.

Name and number identification

Allows a switch to send and receive the calling number, calling name, connected number, and connected name. Additional parameters that control the display of the connected name and number are administered on the Feature-Related System-Parameters form. QSIG Name and Number Identification displays up to 15 characters for the calling and connected name and up to 15 digits for the calling and connected number across ISDN-PRI interfaces.

Path replacement with path retention

With this feature, a call's connections between switches in a private network can be replaced with new connections while the call is active. This feature is invoked when a call is transferred and improvements may be made in costs.

For example, after a call is transferred, the two parties on the transferred call can be connected directly and the unnecessary trunks are dropped off the call. The routing administered at the endpoints may allow for a more cost-effective connection.

Earlier versions of DEFINITY could not route a call over the original trunk when path replacement was turned on. Path Replacement features Path Retention, which allows Communication Manager to use the original trunk group path when the routing analysis performed by the switch shows the original trunk group to be the best route.

QSIG/DCS voice mail interworking

QSIG/DCS Voice Mail Interworking is an enhancement to the current QSIG feature. It integrates DCS and QSIG Centralized Voicemail via the DCS+/QSIG gateway. Switches labeled DCS+/QSIG integrate multi-vendor PBXs into a single voice messaging system. QSIG/DCS Voice Mail Interworking works on G3r, G3si, and G3csi. It provides network flexibility, DCS functionality without a dedicated T1.

Reroute after diversion to voice mail

Supports path optimization for calls that are diverted to a QSIG voice mail hunt group. That is, the switch moves the call to the shortest route between the caller and the voice mail system. For example, if user A on switch A calls user B on switch B and the call goes to a voice mail system attached to switch C, then the call is using up two trunks: A-B and B-C. If there is a trunk that directly connects switches A and C, this feature will drop the A-B and B-C connection and set up a new call from switch A to switch C, thus saving one trunk. The reroute happens automatically; the user never knows that the extra trunk was dropped.

Stand-alone path replacement

Path Replacement is the process of routing an established call over a more efficient path, after which the old call is torn down leaving those resources free. Path Replacement offers potential savings by routing calls more efficiently, saving resources and trunk usage.

Path replacement can exist as a stand-alone feature, or occur in the following additional cases:

- Call Forwarding by Forward Switching supplementary service, including the case where Call Diversion by Rerouting fails, and Call Forwarding is accomplished via forward switching
- Gateway scenarios where Communication Manager, serving as an incoming or outgoing gateway, invokes PR to optimize the path between the gateways
- Calls in queue/vector processing even though no true user is on the call yet
- QSIG Lookahead Interflow call, Best Service Route call, or adjunct route

Supplementary services and rerouting

The QSIG standard defines Supplementary Services as those service beyond voice or data connectivity and number transport and display. Examples include call forwarding, transfer and call hold.

VALU

Call coverage

This feature provides similar call coverage as DCS call coverage and Call Coverage Remote Off Net (C-CRON). The call will come back if covered over QSIG. The functionality will only be complete when all the switches are running under Communication Manager and using QSIG VALU. The covered-to party can still receive distinct alerting.

Call coverage and CAS

When a trunk has both CAS and VALU Call Coverage activated, the coverage display information is provided on calls that cover from a branch PBX to the main PBX. Path replacement will be attempted after coverage.

Distinctive alerting

Provides distinctive ringing, internal and external, to the remote called party when the call is routed over the QSIG network.

Uniform Dial Plan (UDP)

A unique four- or five-digit number assigned to each station on the network. Uniform numbering gives each station a unique number (location code plus extension) that can be used at any location in the electronic tandem network to access that station, Communication Manager enhances the standard UDP with the unrestricted 5-digit Uniform Dial Plan, which allows up to five digits to be parsed for call routing.

Dial Plan Expansion (DPE)

Communication Manager allows you to expand your dial plan to 6 or 7 digits (from 4-digit or 5-digit dial plans). This affects all extensions, including stations, data modules, agent login IDs, vectors, and so on.

This change increases the total number of extensions that can exist in any dial plan. It also allows Avaya servers to participate in networks that already use 6-digit or 7-digit dial plans — for example, a network of switches made by other vendors.

Administrators have the flexibility to administer dial plans between 3 and 7 digits in length, and Communication Manager supports mixed digit lengths in the same dial plan.

Customers upgrading to Communication Manager can choose to migrate to the 6-digit or 7-digit dial plan or not. Customers who choose not to migrate may convert their dial plans at a later date.

Distributed Communications System (DCS) protocol is limited to a dial plan of 3-5 digits, so if your dial plan requires 6 or 7 digits, QSIG — which is the generic name for a family of signaling protocols— is required.

Multi-location dial plans

When a customer migrates from a multiple voice server QSIG/DCS network to a single voice server whose gateways are distributed across a data network, it may initially seem as if some dial plan functions are no longer available.

This feature preserves dial plan uniqueness for extensions and attendants that were provided in a multiple QSIG/DCS network, but were lost when customers migrated to a single distributed network. This feature provides dial plan capabilities similar to those provided before the migration, including:

- extension uniqueness
- announcement per location
- local attendant access
- local ARS code administration

A major reason to migrate customers from a multiple QSIG/DCS environment to a single S8700 network is to provide a greater set of features and help reduce costs. Migrating to a single network reduces the number of systems a customer has to maintain. That in turn lowers administration costs — one switch to administer instead of multiple switches, one dial plan to maintain, and so on. With a single distributed network solution, some features no longer work transparently across multiple locations.

For example, in a department store with many locations, each location might have had its own switch with a QSIG/DCS network. That way, the same extension could be used to represent a unique department in all stores. For example, extension 123 might be the luggage department in all stores. If the customer migrates to a single distributed network, this functionality is not available without this feature.

In addition, an S8700 solution does not assure that a call that is routed to an attendant would terminate at the local attendant. Let us use an example of a public school district that previously was networked with a switch at each school. If the school district migrates to an S8700 network, dialing the attendant access code at your school may not route your call to the local attendant.

Instead of having to dial a complete extension, the multi-location dial plan feature allows a user to dial a shorted version of the extension. For example, a customer can continue to dial 4567 instead of having to dial 123-4567. Communication Manager takes the location prefix and adds those digits to the front of the dialed number. The switch then analyzes the entire dialed string and routes the call based on the administration on the *DIAL PLAN PARAMETERS* form.

Punctuation on station displays

On digital telephone displays, Communication Manager can display punctuation to make reading a 6-digit or 7-digit extension easier. The number of digits plus punctuation that can be displayed cannot exceed eight characters.

Punctuation marks that are allowed include:

- hyphen (for example, xxx-xxxx)
- period (for example, xxx.xxxxx)
- space (for example, xx xx xx)

Formats for displaying numbers with punctuation are on the dial plan parameter form.

- the default 6-digit extension display format is xx.xx.xx
- the default 7-digit extension display format is xxx-xxxx

For more information on the dial plan parameter form, see the *Administrator's Guide for Avaya Communication Manager*, 555-233-506.

Extended trunk access

Used with Uniform Dial Plan, allows the system to send any unrecognized number (such as an extension not administered locally) to another system for analysis and routing. Such unrecognized numbers can be Facility Access Codes, Trunk Access Codes, or extensions that are not in the Uniform Dial Plan table. Non-Uniform Dial Plan numbers are administered on either the First Digit Table (on the Dial Plan Record form) or the Second Digit Table. They are not administered on the Extended Trunk Access Call Screening Table. Extended Trunk Access helps you make full use of automatic routing and Uniform Dial Plan.

Extension Number Portability — When employees move within the network, they can retain their extension numbers. The ability to keep extension numbers, and even Electronic Tandem Network and Direct Inward Dialed numbers, when moving to other locations within the company eliminates missed calls and saves valuable time.

Data interfaces

Administered connections

Automatically establishes an end-to-end connection between two access or data endpoints based on administered attributes. This feature provides capabilities such as alarm notification, including an administrable alarm type and threshold; automatic restoration of connections established over a Software-Defined Data Network; ISDN-PRI trunk group [service may be referred to as ISDN-PRI (AC/AE) Service]; scheduled as well as continuous connections; and administrable-retry interval for failed connection attempts.

Data call setup

Enables the setting up of data calls using a variety of methods, such as: keyboard dialing, telephone dialing, Hayes command dialing, permanent switched connections, administered connections, automatic calling unit interface, and Hot Line dialing. Data Call Setup is provided for both DCP and ISDN-BRI telephones.

Data hot line

Provides for automatic placement of a data call when the originator hangs up. Data Hot Line may be used for security purposes. This feature offers fast and accurate call placement to commonly called data endpoints. Data terminal users who constantly call the same number can use Data Hot Line to automatically place the call when they hang up the telephone.

Data modules

Data modules connect systems running Communication Manager with other communications equipment, changing protocol, connections, and timing as necessary.

Communication Manager supports the following types of data module:

- High Speed Links
- Data stands
- Modular-processor data module
- 7000-series data modules
- Modular-trunk data module
- Asynchronous Data Unit
- Asynchronous Data Module (for ISDN-Basic Rate Interface telephones)
- Terminal adapters

All of these data modules support industry standards and include options for setting the operating profile to match that of the data equipment.

Data privacy

Protects analog data calls from being disturbed by any of the system's overriding or ringing features. Data Privacy is activated when you dial an activation code at the beginning of the call.

Data restriction

Protects analog data calls from being disturbed by any of the system's overriding or ringing features. It is administered at the system level to selected analog and multi-appearance telephones and trunk groups.

Default dialing

Provides data terminal users who dial a specific number the majority of the time a very simple method of dialing that number. This feature enhances Data Terminal (Keyboard) Dialing by allowing a data terminal user to place a data call to a pre-administered destination in several different ways, depending on the type of data module. Data Terminal Dialing and Alphanumeric Dialing are unaffected.

IP asynchronous links

IP asynchronous links enable Communication Manager to transfer existing asynchronous adjunct connectivity to an Ethernet (TCP/IP) environment. IP asynchronous links support switch server applications, as well as client applications. Systems running Communication Manager can connect to System Management applications such as the Avaya Visibility Suite over the LAN. Call Detail Recording (CDR) devices, Property Management System (PMS) and printers can be connected using asynchronous TCP/IP links.

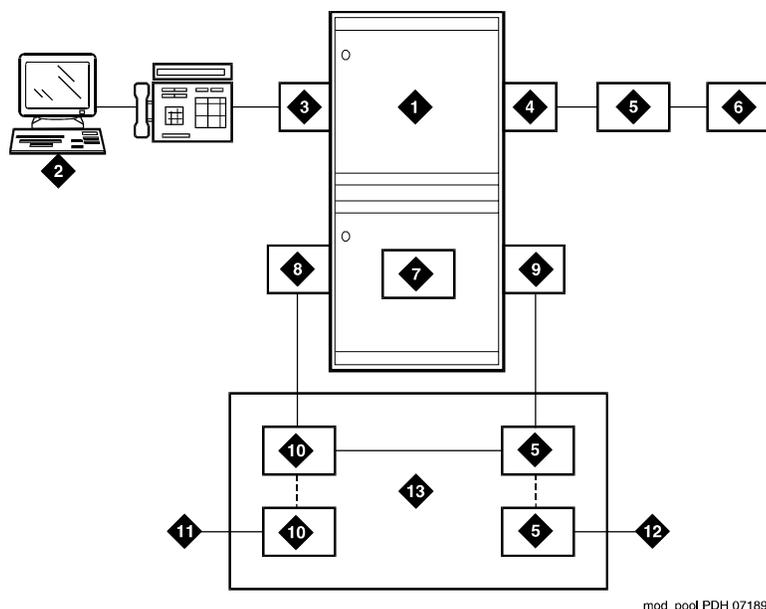
IP asynchronous links:

- Reduce the cost of connecting to systems running Communication Manager for various adjuncts
- Allow for an open architecture to transport information and increases the speed at which data is transferred
- Allow customers to manage applications from on-site or remote locations
- Allow several system management applications to run on a single PC, thereby reducing hardware requirements
- Guarantee data delivery through a reliable session-layer protocol
- Support customers' existing serial hardware investment through use of Network Terminal Servers

Modem pooling

Enables switched connections between digital data endpoints (data modules) and analog data endpoints and acoustic coupled modems. Data transmission between a digital data endpoint and an analog endpoint requires a conversion since the DCP format used by the data module is not compatible with the modulated signals of an analog modem. A modem translates DCP format into modulated signals and vice versa. The Modem Pooling feature provides a set of modems for such conversions.

Communication Manager modem pools are assigned into modem pool groups. A group can have up to 32 modems, called "members." Communication Manager can have as many as 63 modem pool groups. See [Figure 5](#).

Figure 5. Modem pooling

- | | | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|----|---------------------------------|
| 1 | System running Communication Manager | 7 | Integrated pooled modem |
| 2 | Asynchronous terminal | 8 | Data line port |
| 3 | Digital port | 9 | Analog port |
| 4 | Analog trunk | 10 | 7400A |
| 5 | Modem | 11 | Digital communications protocol |
| 6 | Remote application | 12 | Analog |
| | | 13 | EIA standard |

Multimedia application server interface

The Multimedia Application Server Interface provides a link between Communication Manager and one or more Multimedia Communications eXchange nodes. A Multimedia Communications eXchange is a stand-alone multimedia call processor produced by Avaya. This link to Communication Manager enhances the capabilities of each Multimedia Communications eXchange system by enabling it to share some of the Communication Manager features. In particular, the interface provides the following advantages:

- Call Detail Recording (CDR)— The capture of call detail records so you can analyze the call patterns and usage of multimedia calls just as Communication Manager administrators analyze normal calls.

- Automatic Alternate Routing/Automatic Route Selection (AAR/ARS) — The intelligent selection of the most cost-effective routing for calls, based on available resources and your carrier preference. The system may select public trunks via DEFINITY Multimedia eXchange (MMCX)
- Voice Mail Integration — You can access your EMBEDDED AUDIX or INTUITY AUDIX voice messaging system from a Multimedia Communication eXchange (MMCX).

Multimedia calling

Multimedia calls are initiated with voice and video only. Once a call is established, one of the parties may initiate an associated data conference to include all of the parties on the call who are capable of supporting data. The data conference is controlled by an adjunct device called an Expansion Services Module (ESM).

Multimedia call early answer on vectors and stations

Early Answer is a feature applied to multimedia calls in conjunction with conversion to voice. Early Answer:

- Answers the data call
- Establishes the multimedia protocol prior to completion of a converted call
- Ensures that a voice path to/from the originator is available when the (voice) call is answered

For an incoming call, Early Answer answers the dynamic service-link calls when the destination endpoint answers, unless Early Answer is specified during routing or termination processing.

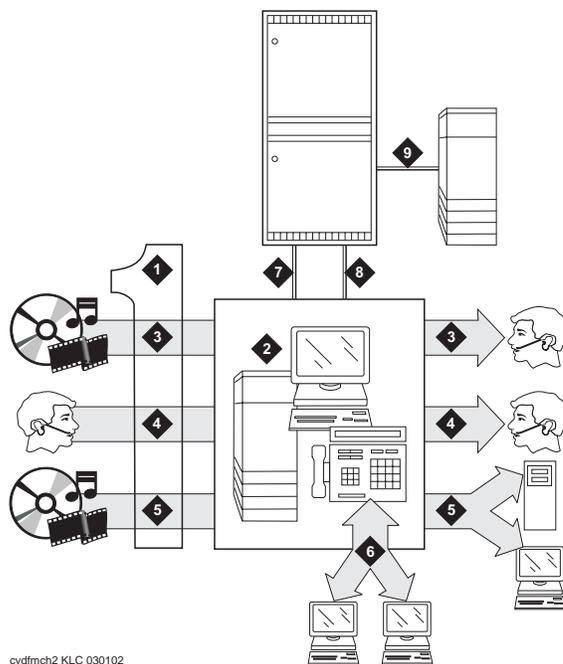
NOTE:

The “destination voice endpoint” might be an outgoing voice trunk if the destination voice station is forwarded or covered off-premises.

Multimedia Call Handling (MMCH)

Multimedia Call Handling (MMCH) enables you to control voice, video, and data transmissions using your telephone set. The feature buttons on a multi-function telephone enable you to conduct video conferences, and forward, cover, hold, or park multimedia calls much as you would a standard voice call. You can also share PC applications so that you and colleagues can collaborate while working from remote sites. See [Figure 6](#).

Figure 6. Multimedia Call Handling (MMCH)



cydfmh2 KLC 030102

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 One number access | 5 Call redirection |
| 2 Multimedia call complex | 6 Multimedia conferencing |
| 3 Multimedia to voice conversion | 7 BRI data connection |
| 4 Standard voice call handling | 8 DCP voice connection |
| | 9 ESM data collaboration |

Multimedia call redirection to multimedia endpoint

A dual port multimedia station may be a destination of call redirection features such as call coverage, forwarding, and station hunting. The station can receive and accept full multimedia calls or data calls converted to multimedia.

Multimedia data conferencing (T.120) through ESM

The data conference is controlled by an adjunct device called an Expansion Services Module (ESM). The Expansion Services Module is used to terminate T.120 protocols [including Generalized Conference Call (GCC), a protocol standard for data conference control] and provide data conference control and data distribution. The MultiMedia Interface circuit pack, TN787, is used to rate adapt T.120 data to/from the ESM.

Multimedia hold, conference, transfer, and drop

Station users have the ability to activate hold, conference, transfer, or drop on multimedia calls. Multimedia endpoints and voice-only stations may participate in the same conference.

Multimedia multiple-port networks

Communication Manager supports the equivalent of 580 Basic mode complexes operating at 6CCS traffic level. All enhanced mode complexes operate with soft-mode service links since the use of hard-mode service links reduces capacities. G3si limits are 1/3 to 1/2 of the G3r limits, depending on memory limitations and port network limitations.

Pass advice of charge information to world class BRI endpoints

Provides Advice of Charge (AOC) information to World Class BRI (WCBRI) endpoints. On a call using a WCBRI endpoint, AOC information will be displayed on the endpoint after the call has completed and the far end has hung up.

Call routing

Alternate facility restriction levels

Allows Communication Manager to adjust facility restriction levels or authorization codes for lines or trunks. Each line or trunk is normally assigned a facility restriction level. With this feature, Alternate Facility Restriction Levels are also assigned. Attendants can change to the alternates, thus changing access to lines and trunks. You might want to use this feature to disable most long-distance calling at night, for example, to prevent unauthorized staff from making long-distance calls.

CAUTION:

This feature may change the AAR and ARS routing preferences. Using it on tandem and tie-trunk applications affects entire networks. Calls that are part of a cross-country private network may be blocked.

Automatic routing features

Communication Manager provides a variety of automatic routing features for public and private networks. Automatic Alternate Routing (AAR) and Automatic Route Selection (ARS) are the foundation for these automatic-routing features. They route calls based on the preferred (normally the least expensive) route available at the time the call is placed. Generally, AAR routes calls over a private network and ARS routes calls using the public network numbering plan. However, both AAR and ARS support public and private networks. You can use the other features listed in this section when you use AAR and ARS.

Automatic Alternate Routing (AAR)

Automatic Alternate Routing (AAR) allows private network calls to originate and terminate at one or many locations without accessing the public network. When you dial an access code and phone number, AAR selects the most desirable route for the call and performs digit conversion as necessary. If the first choice route is unavailable, another route is chosen automatically.

The numbers you call using AAR are normally private-network numbers. However, you can call a public-network number, a service code, an international number, operator access code, or an operator-assisted dialing number. With AAR and Subnet Trunking, you have a convenient way to place international calls to frequently-called foreign cities. Such calls route as far as possible over the private network, and then access the public network. This saves toll charges and allows you to use your private network as much as possible.

Automatic Route Selection (ARS)

Automatic Route Selection (ARS) selects carriers automatically and routes calls inexpensively over the public network. When there are one or more long-distance carriers and Wide Area Telecommunications Service (WATS) provided, Communication Manager selects the most preferred route for the call. Long-distance carrier-code dialing is not required on routes selected by the system. You assign long-distance carrier-codes and Communication Manager translates them. The system inserts codes as needed to guarantee automatic-carrier selection. ARS can route calls to a variety of types-of-numbers and access a variety of types of trunk groups.

ARS/AAR dialing without FAC

The Automatic Route Selection (ARS) version of this feature allows users to place calls by dialing the full public-network numbers without first having to dial a Feature Access Code (FAC) — such as the number “9” to access an outside line. The system recognizes the call as an ARS call and uses the ARS digit analysis and digit conversion tables to manipulate the digits to route the call.

The Automatic Alternate Routing (AAR) version of this feature is similar except that the call is routed as an AAR call and therefore uses the AAR digit analysis and digit conversion tables.

AAR/ARS overlap sending

Communication Manager supports overlap sending for AAR and ARS calls that are routed over ISDN-PRI trunk groups. ISDN-PRI call-address information is sent one digit at a time instead of in one block. In countries with complex public-network numbering plans, this allows for a significant decrease in call setup time. When overlap receiving is enabled, this is especially significant for tandem calls.

AAR/ARS partitioning

Allows AAR and ARS to be partitioned into 8 user groups within a single system and provides individual routing treatment for each of these user groups.

User groups share the same Partition Group Number, which indicates the choice of routing tables that are used on a particular call. Each Class of Restriction (COR) is assigned a specific Partition Group Number or Time of Day specification. Different classes of restriction may be assigned the same Partition Group Number.

Generalized route selection

Provides voice and data call-routing capabilities. You use it to select not only the least-cost routing, but also optimal routing over the appropriate facilities. It enhances AAR and ARS by providing additional parameters in the routing decision and maximizing the chance of using the right facility to route the call. Also, if an endpoint incompatibility exists, it provides a conversion resource (such as a modem from a modem pool) to attempt to match the right facility with the right endpoint.

Look-ahead routing

Provides an efficient way to use trunking facilities. It allows you to continue to try to reroute an outgoing ISDN-PRI call that is not completing. When Communication Manager receives a cause value that indicates congestion, Look-Ahead Routing tells the system what to do next. For each routing preference, you can indicate if the next routing-preference should be attempted or if the current routing-preference should be attempted again.

Node number routing

Allows you to specify the route pattern associated with each node in a private network. It is a required capability for Extension Number Portability and is used in conjunction with Automatic Route Selection, AAR and ARS Partitioning, Private Networking, and Uniform Dial Plan. Uniform Dial Plan extensions can be routed to a specified node using its associated pattern. Node Number Routing allows a Uniform Dial Plan route pattern based on node numbers or on location codes. On the AAR and ARS Digit Analysis Tables, you also can specify a Node Number instead of a Route Pattern.

Time of day routing

Provides the most economical routing of ARS and AAR calls. This routing is based on the time of day and day of the week that each call is made. Up to 8 TOD routing plans may be administered, each scheduled to change up to 6 times a day for each day in the week. This allows you to take advantage of lower calling rates during specific times of the day and week. In addition, companies with locations in different time zones can use different locations that have lower rates at different times of the day or week. This feature is also used to change patterns during the times an office is closed in order to reduce or eliminate unauthorized calls.

Multiple location support

Multiple Location Support enables local user time, local ARS Public Analysis Tables for local trunking, automatic Daylight Savings Time, and enhances shared resource algorithms (touch tone receivers) when Remote Expansion Port Networks (EPNs), ATM Port Networks, and Avaya Media Gateways are remoted off of a central server at a different location.

Multiple location support for network regions

Multiple location support for network regions allows remote Avaya media gateways connected to a central Avaya media server to retain:

- Local user time
- Local ARS public analysis tables for local trunking
- Automatic daylight savings time
- Local touch tone receivers for IP communications devices, such as Avaya IP telephones.

Communication Manager allows administrators to map locations to IP network regions.

Traveling class marks

Traveling Class Marks are a mechanism for passing a caller's facility restriction level from one Electronic Tandem Network switch to another. Traveling Class Marks allow privilege checking to be passed across switches through the Electronic Tandem Network.

Miscellaneous

Answer detection

For purposes of Call-Detail Recording (CDR), it is important to know when the called party answers a call. Communication Manager provides three ways to determine whether the called party has answered an outgoing call.

Answer supervision by time-out

You set a timer for each trunk group. If the caller is off-hook when the timer expires, Communication Manager assumes that the call has been answered. This is the least accurate method. Calls that are shorter than the timer duration do not generate call records, and calls that ring for a long time produce call records whether they are answered or not.

Call-classifier board

A call-classifier board detects tones and voice-frequency signals on the line and determines whether a call has been answered.

Network answer supervision

The Central Office (CO) sends back a signal to indicate that the far end has answered. If a call has traveled over a private network before reaching the CO, the signal is transmitted back over the private network to the originating system. This method is extremely accurate, but is not available in the United States over CO, FX, or WATS trunks.

Alternate gatekeeper

The alternate gatekeeper enhancement can provide survivability between Avaya Communication Manager and IP communications devices such as IP Telephones and IP softphones. This is accomplished by providing alternate gatekeepers (CLAN) in the event of network or gatekeeper failure and by load balancing endpoint traffic among multiple gatekeepers. It is important to recognize that calls will drop during that interval while the communication is re-established to the switch.

ATM WAN spare processor (WSP)

See [“WAN Spare Processor \(WSP\)” on page 132](#).

Local Survivable Processor (LSP)

A Local Survivable Processor (LSP) is an Internal Call Controller (ICC) with an integral G700 Media Gateway, in which the ICC is administered to behave as a spare processor rather than as the main processor. The standby Avaya S8700 Media Server runs in duplex mode with the main server ready to take control in the event of a outage — with no loss of communication.

An LSP is a configuration used to provide redundancy of the Avaya call processing application. Usually, a media module serves as the ICC for the system, but it can also serve as a redundant processor for call processing. In the LSP configuration, the processor serves as an alternate controller/gatekeeper for IP entities, such as IP telephones and media gateways. These IP entities use the LSP when they lose connectivity to their primary controller.

In the event that the communication link is broken between the remote Avaya G700 Media Gateway and the primary call controller (either an Avaya S8300 Server or an Avaya S8700 Server), the LSP provides service for the Avaya IP telephones and Avaya G700 Media Gateways that were controlled by the primary call controller.

How the Avaya G700 Gateways and IP endpoints change control from the primary to the LSP is driven by the endpoints themselves, using a list of call controllers. During initialization, each IP endpoint and Avaya G700 Gateway receives a list of call controllers. The IP endpoints ask each call controller in the list for service until one responds with a positive reply. If the link to that call controller fails at some later time, the endpoint will try to receive service from the other call controllers in the list, including the LSP.

The LSP provides service to all Avaya G700 Gateways and IP endpoints that register with it. When the primary call controller is prepared to provide service, the LSP is reset. This informs the IP endpoints to try their call controller list again, and returns to the primary call controller for service.

The LSP provides redundancy in a variety of configurations, and can be located anywhere in a network of Avaya G700 Gateways.

For LSP capacities, refer to the capacities table. See [“Capacities” on page 32](#) for instructions how to view the capacities table.

Multiple network regions per CLAN

Multiple network regions per CLAN enables a single CLAN to provide registration and call control to IP endpoints in multiple network regions. Communication Manager implements this approach by allowing IP addresses to be mapped to network regions in a mapping form, instead of just to a CLAN. When an IP phone registers, the switch determines the phone's network region number based on the phone's IP address.

Power failure transfer

Provides service to and from the local telephone company central office (CO), including wide area telecommunications system, during a power failure. This allows you to make or answer important or emergency calls during a power failure. This feature is also called emergency transfer.

Survivable Remote EPN (SREPN)

The Survivable Remote Expansion Port Network (SREPN) allows a DEFINITY ECS (R6r or later) EPN to provide service to the customer when the link to the main processor fails or is severed or when the processor or CSS fails. When the links to the system are restored and stable, the logic switch is manually reset and the EPN is reconnected to the links from the switch. There are both command and manual resets. The resets can be done remotely at the SAT or manually at the equipment.

The SREPN must be administered separately (not as a duplicated PPN) to function in a disaster recovery scenario. It does not function as a survivable remote EPN without the administration (stations, trunks, features) to support its operation.

⇒ NOTE:

SREPN is not compatible with ATM port network connectivity (ATM-PNC). If that's the case, see [“WAN Spare Processor \(WSP\)” on page 132](#).

System administrator**Access security gateway**

Access security gateway is an authentication interface used to secure the system administration and maintenance ports and/or logins on the system. Access security gateway employs a challenge/response protocol to confirm the validity of a user and reduce the opportunity for unauthorized access.

Successful authentication is accomplished when the feature communicates with a compatible key. The challenge/response negotiation is initiated once an RS-232 session is established and a valid system login ID has been supplied by a user. The authentication transaction consists of a challenge, issued by the system and based on the login ID supplied by the user, followed by receipt of the expected response, which is supplied by the user.

AES encryption algorithm for bearer channels

Communication Manager supports the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) form of signal encryption for IP telephony. This encryption algorithm is in addition to Avaya's proprietary encryption protocol, the Avaya Encryption Algorithm (AEA).

AES encryption is a cryptographic algorithm developed by the U.S. Government to protect unclassified information. Communication Manager uses AES with 128 bit keys in counter mode (AES-128-CTR).

Administration is supported to select a combination of no encryption, AEA encryption, and/or AES encryption on a per codec set basis.

Alternate facility restriction levels

This feature allows Communication Manager to adjust facility restriction levels or authorization codes for lines or trunks. Each line or trunk is normally assigned a facility restriction level. With this feature, alternate facility restriction levels are also assigned. Attendants can change to the alternates, thus changing access to lines and trunks.

You might want to use this feature to disable most long-distance calling at night, for example, to prevent unauthorized staff from making long-distance calls.

CAUTION:

This feature may change the AAR and ARS routing preferences. Using it on tandem and tie-trunk applications affects entire networks. Calls that are part of a cross-country private network may be blocked.

Alternate operations support system alarm number

This feature allows you to establish a second number for Communication Manager to call when an alarmable event occurs. This feature is useful for alerting a second support organization, such as INADS or OneVision.

Privacy — attendant lockout

Prevents an attendant from re-entering a multiple-party connection held on the console unless recalled by a telephone user. This feature is administered on a system-wide basis. It is either activated or not activated.

Authorization codes — 13 digits

Authorization codes extend calling-privilege control and enhance security for remote-access callers. Authorization codes can be up to 13 digits in length.

Avaya site administration authorization codes may be used to:

- Override facility restriction levels assigned to originating stations or trunks
- Restrict individual incoming tie trunks and remote-access trunks from accessing outgoing trunks
- Track CDR calls for cost-allocation purposes
- Provide additional security control

Call restrictions

By dialing an access code, administrators and attendants have the ability to restrict users from making or receiving certain types of calls. There are five restrictions:

- Outward — User cannot place external calls.
- Station-to-station — User cannot place or receive internal calls.
- Termination — User cannot receive any calls (except priority calls).
- Toll — User cannot place toll calls but can place local calls.
- Total — User can neither place nor receive any calls.

Class of Restriction (COR)

Defines many different classes of call origination and termination privileges. Communication Manager may have no restrictions, only a single COR, or may have as many classes of restrictions as necessary to effect the desired restrictions. Many different types of classes of restriction can be assigned to many types of facilities on the switch. For example, you can use a calling-party COR to prevent callers from accessing the public network.

Block collect call

See [“Block collect call” on page 104](#).

Customer-provided equipment alarm

Provides you with an indication that a system alarm has occurred and that the system has attempted to contact a service organization. A device that you provide, such a lamp or a bell, is used to indicate the alarm situation. You can administer the level of alarm about which you want to be notified.

Data privacy

Data privacy protects analog data calls from being disturbed by any of the system's overriding or ringing features. Data privacy is activated when you dial an activation code at the beginning of the call.

Data restriction

Data restriction protects analog data calls from being disturbed by any of the system's overriding or ringing features. It is administered at the system level to selected analog and multi-appearance telephones and trunk groups.

Facility restriction levels and traveling class marks

Allows certain calls to specific users, while denying the same calls to other users. For example, certain users may be allowed to use Central Office (CO) trunks to other corporate locations while other users may be restricted to less expensive private-network lines. You can administer up to eight levels of restriction for users of AAR and ARS.

H.248 link encryption

To provide privacy for media streams carried over IP networks, the H.248 signaling channel between the media server (media gateway controller) and the media gateways is encrypted. This signalling channel is used to distribute the media session keys to the media gateways, and may carry user-dialed authorization codes and passwords.

This feature protects our customer investments by encrypting the signaling channel between the gateway — including the G700 and G350 Media Gateways — and server (using proprietary technology). This feature also protects media encryption key, PINs, and account codes between the media gateway and the media gateway controller.

Encryption of the H.248 link to any given media gateway may be enabled or disabled through the Media Gateway form. However, the encryption protocol cannot be disabled.

Malicious call trace

Allows you to trace malicious calls. You define a group of terminal users who can notify others in the group when they receive a malicious call. These users can then retrieve information related to the call. Using this information, you can identify the malicious call source or provide information to personnel at an adjacent system to complete the trace. It also allows you to record the malicious call, as well as trace a malicious call over ETSI PRI.

Malicious call trace logging

Malicious call trace logging allows a PC to receive information from Communication Manager to log malicious calls.

Media encryption

Media Encryption is the encryption of the audio (voice) portion of a Voice Over IP (VoIP) call. Media Encryption can be used to provide enhanced privacy for VoIP communications that involve exchange of sensitive information. Media Encryption is provided between Avaya media gateways and media servers.

Digitally encrypting the audio (voice) portion of a VoIP call can reduce the risk of electronic eavesdropping. IP packet monitors, sometimes called sniffers, are to VoIP calls what wiretaps are to circuit-switched (TDM) calls. One exception is that an IP packet monitor can watch for and capture unencrypted IP packets, and can play back the conversation in real-time or store it for later playback.

Communication Manager encrypts IP packets before they traverse the IP network. An encrypted conversation sounds like white noise or static when played through an IP monitor. End users do not know that a call is encrypted because there are:

- No visual or audible indicators to indicate that the call is encrypted.
- No appreciable voice quality differences between encrypted calls and non-encrypted calls.

 **SECURITY ALERT:**

Be sure that you understand these important media encryption limitations:

- *Any call that involves a circuit-switched (TDM) endpoint such as a DCP or analog phone is vulnerable to conventional wire-tapping techniques.*
- *Any call that involves an IP endpoint or gateway that does not support encryption can be a potential target for IP monitoring. A common example of this is are IP trunks to 3rd-party vendor switches.*
- *Any party that is not encrypting an IP conference call exposes all parties on the IP call between the unencrypted party and its supporting media processor to monitoring, even though the other IP links are encrypting.*

Media Encryption requirements

The following table lists the supported hardware, software, and firmware requirements for Media Encryption.

 **NOTE:**

Your server must be running Communication Manager, Release 1.3 or later.

Hardware	Minimum Software or Firmware
Avaya IP phones <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■4606 ■4612 ■4620 ■4624 ■4630 	Firmware version 1.8 or later
IP Softphone	Software R4V1 with service pack 1 or later
IP SoftConsole	Software release 1.5 or later
TN2302AP IP Media Processor circuit pack	Firmware version 47 or later

The following equipment is not supported, meaning that Media Encryption does not work with these devices:

- Avaya S8300 Media Server
- Avaya G700 Media Gateway
- Avaya 4602 IP Telephone
- Avaya R300 Remote Office
- Any gateway or IP endpoint that cannot support the Avaya encryption algorithm
- Any wired circuit-switched (TDM) telephone (digital or analog) or trunk

License file requirements

Media Encryption does not work unless the server has a valid License File with Media Encryption enabled. To determine whether Media Encryption is enabled in the current License File:

1. At the SAT type **display system-parameters customer-options** and press ENTER to display the OPTIONAL FEATURES form.
2. Scroll to page 3 ([Figure 7](#)) and ensure that the Media Encryption Over IP field is **y**.

Figure 7. Media encryption field on the Optional Features form, page 3

```
display system-parameters customer-options                               Page 3 of 10
                                OPTIONAL FEATURES

Emergency Access to Attendant? y                                     ISDN Feature Plus? y
Enable 'dadmin' Login? y                                           ISDN Network Call Redirection? y
Enhanced Conferencing? n                                           ISDN-BRI Trunks? y
Enhanced EC500? y                                                  ISDN-PRI? y
Extended Cvg/Fwd Admin? y                                         Local Spare Processor? n
External Device Alarm Admin? y                                     Malicious Call Trace? y
Five Port Networks Max Per MCC? y                                  Media Encryption Over IP? y
Flexible Billing? y                                                Mode Code for Centralized Voice Mail? y
Forced Entry of Account Codes? y
Global Call Classification? y
Hospitality (Basic)? y Multimedia Appl. Server Interface (MASI)? n
Hospitality (G3V3 Enhancements)? y                               Multimedia Call Handling (Basic)? n
IP Trunks? y                                                       Multimedia Call Handling (Enhanced)? n
                                                                    Multiple Locations? y
IP Attendant Consoles? y                                          Personal Station Access (PSA)? y
IP Stations? y
```

Restriction — controlled

Allows an attendant or telephone user, with console permission, to activate and deactivate for an individual telephone or a group of telephones, the following restrictions:

- outward
- total
- station-to-station
- termination restrictions

Security Violation Notification (SVN)

Security Violation Notification (SVN) allows you to set security-related parameters and to receive notification when the limits that you have established are violated. You can run reports related to both valid and invalid access attempts. You can also disable a login ID or remote access authorization that is associated with a security violation.

Signaling encryption for SIP trunks

Signaling encryption for SIP trunks protects customer investments by encrypting the voice channel over SIP trunks.

Station security codes

To provide additional security around the customer options the “init” login has been provided with additional security for the purpose of establishing an authentication procedure for attempts to remotely log into the system.

Tripwire security

Tripwire is a security program provided on S8300 and S8700 Media Servers. The list of files that Tripwire monitors needs to be determined during design when all administration and configuration files have been identified.

If there are any detected security violations, Tripwire reports its findings through the security log. These events generate an alarm.

⇒ NOTE:

Tripwire normally reports security violations through e-mail. However, by reporting events to the security log, security violations can be immediately acted upon.

End user

Backup alerting

Notifies backup attendants that the primary attendant cannot pick up a call. It provides both audible and visual alerting to backup stations when the attendant queue reaches its queue warning level. When the queue drops below the queue warning level, alerting stops. Audible alerting also occurs when the attendant console is in night mode, regardless of the attendant queue size.

Barrier codes

A security code used with remote access to prevent unauthorized access to your system. To increase your system's security, use a 7-digit barrier code with remote access barrier code aging. A barrier code automatically expires if an expiration date or number of accesses has exceeded the limits you set. If both a time interval and access limits are administered for a barrier code, the barrier code expires when one of the conditions is satisfied.

 **NOTE:**

Barrier codes are not tracked by call detail recording (CDR). Barrier codes are incoming access codes, whereas, authorization codes are primarily outgoing access codes.

Calling/Connected Party Number (CPN) restriction

Per call CPN restriction

Users may indicate calling number privacy information. For ISDN calls, the CPN presentation indicator is encoded accordingly. For non-ISDN calls going to a public network that supports the CPN restriction feature, the network specific feature activation code gets passed to the network for interpretation and activation of the desired feature.

If per call CPN restriction is activated for an outgoing call, it will override any per line CPN restriction administration for the calling station, and will override any ISDN trunk group administration for sending calling number.

Per line CPN restriction

Users may block the calling party number when originating calls. For ISDN calls, the CPN presentation indicator is encoded accordingly. For non-ISDN calls, going to a public network that supports the CPN restriction feature, the network specific feature activation code gets passed to the network for interpretation and activation.

If per line CPN restriction is administered for a station, it will override any ISDN trunk group administration for sending calling party number.

Crisis alerts to a digital numeric pager

Crisis alert can also send notification of an emergency call to a digital pager. In this case, it sends a message of 7-digits to 22-digits to the pager and displays a crisis alert code, an extension and room number, and a main number (if one is entered). The person paged thus knows the origin of the emergency call and can direct emergency-service response to the appropriate location.

To use crisis alert with a digital pager, the system is administered so that at least one digital set has a CRSS-ALRT button and the `Alert Pager` field is set to `y`. Any station with a CRSS-ALRT button and a pager receives the correct alert.

Crisis alerts to a digital station

Crisis alert uses both audible and visual alerting to notify administered digital display stations when an emergency call is made. Audible alerting sounds like an ambulance siren. Visual alerting flashes the CRSS-ALRT button lamp and the display of the caller's name and extension (or room). Crisis alert's display of the origin of the emergency call enables the attendant or other user to direct emergency-service response to the caller.

When crisis alerting is active, the station is placed in position-busy mode so that other incoming calls can not interfere with the emergency call notification. The station can still originate calls to allow notification of other personnel.

If an emergency call is made while another crisis alert is still active, the incoming call will be placed in the queue. If the system is administered so that all users must respond, then every user must respond to every call, in which case the calls are not necessarily queued in the order in which they were made. If the system is administered so that only one user must respond, the first crisis alert remains active at the phone where it was acknowledged. Subsequent calls are queued to the next available station in the order in which they were made.

Crisis alerts to an attendant console

Crisis alert uses both audible and visual alerting to notify attendant consoles when an emergency call is made. Audible alerting sounds like an ambulance siren. Visual alerting flashes the CRSS-ALRT button lamp and the display of the caller's name and extension (or room). Crisis alert's display of the origin of the emergency call enables the attendant or other user to direct emergency-service response to the caller. Though often used in the hospitality industry, it can be set up to work with any standard attendant console.

When crisis alerting is active, the console is placed in position-busy mode so that other incoming calls can not interfere with the emergency call notification. The console can still originate calls to allow notification of other personnel. Once a crisis alert call has arrived at a console, the console user must press the position-busy button to unbusy the console, and press the crisis-alert button to deactivate audible and visual alerting.

If an emergency call is made while another crisis alert is still active, the incoming call will be placed in the queue. If the system is administered so that all users must respond, then every user must respond to every call, in which case the calls are not necessarily queued in the order in which they were made. If the system is administered so that only one user must respond, the first crisis alert remains active at the phone where it was acknowledged. Subsequent calls are queued to the next available station in the order in which they were made.

Emergency access to the attendant

Provides for emergency calls to be placed to an attendant. These calls can be placed automatically by the system or can be dialed by system users. Emergency access calls can receive priority handling by the attendant.

E911 CAMA trunk group

See [“E911 CAMA trunk group” on page 141](#).

Privacy — auto exclusion

When the class of service (COS) is set for the automatic exclusion option, the feature is activated when you take your telephone off-hook. The feature can be deactivated when you push the exclusion button before dialing a call or during a call. An excluded call that is on hold can be taken off hold by any telephone that has a bridged appearance of the telephone that put the call on hold.

Privacy — manual exclusion

Allows multi-appearance telephone users to keep other users with appearances of the same extension number from bridging onto an existing call. Exclusion is activated by pressing the exclusion button on a per-call basis.

Restriction — controlled

See [“Restriction — controlled” on page 192](#).

Station lock

Station lock allows users to lock their phones to prevent unauthorized outgoing calls. Users can block outgoing calls and still receive incoming calls. This feature is activated by pressing a phone button or dialing a feature access code (FAC). Station lock allows users to block all outgoing calls except for emergency calls. Phones can be remotely locked and unlocked.

Special applications are those custom features developed by the Avaya global rapid response team to meet a particular customer's need. Each feature is ordered through the rapid response team as an al la carte item. Special ordering and provisioning procedures apply. Contact your Avaya Sales representative or authorized Avaya business partner for more information.

The features available include the following:

- Support connectivity with northern telecom DMS100/250 names display (setup method - names transparency)
- Pickup of attendant calls using TAAS during day service
- Record actual answering party on call detail recording
- Flash to answer call waiting/hold
- Cancel ARS by dialing “*”
- External coverage path changes to internal path when night device is active
- Enhanced emergency alert to a station
- External coverage path to be used when a trunk-originated call is on soft hold
- Expand DS1s to 332 line side only (DEFINITY Server R only)
- Integrated directory service over DCS (IDS+)
- Administrable conference tones by class of service (COS)
- Enhanced display for 8434 terminals on redirected calls
- Enhanced display for 8434, 8434D, 7444D, 7407+, 7407D and Callmaster terminals on redirected calls and bridged appearances

- Display incoming digits for ISDN trunk groups
- Night service on DID trunk group
- Display UUI information
- Enhanced DID routing
- Vector collect # and * literally option
- Service observe physical set
- Busy tones on send all calls with no available coverage points
- 80000 UDP extension records (DEFINITY Server R only)
- Dial by name
- Variable length account codes
- 25,000 facility busy indicators (DEFINITY Server R only)
- ISDN redirecting number
- Enhancement added to support country version 1a
- Russia power industry - Russia only
- Support calling party category on QSIG code set 5
- Attendant dial 0 redirect
- Listed directory number (LDN) attendant queue priority
- Omit designated extensions from station displays
- Update display for redirected calls
- Priority attendant queuing by COR
- Toll-free announcements until answered (in vectoring with ISDN trunks)
- CDR start time/provide date and time in hours, minutes, and seconds
- Prime line preference
- Idle appearance preference display enhancement
- Allow station users to program their own facility busy indicators on 6400 and 8400 series terminals
- XSTATION support with the DENSO 300M - Japan only
- UUI for universal caller ID in codeset 6
- Station user button ring control
- Delay ISDN connect on agent answer/prevent vector ISDN alerting
- Forward held-call calling party number (CPN) for call transfer/conference

-
- Enhancement to QSIG rerouting for call forwarding - don't strip ARS/AAR access code (9) when forwarding digits from DEFINITY ECS to IPC turret
 - Expand the number of coverage paths (DEFINITY Server R only) to 2000 and remote cover points

Avaya Communication Manager system management provides the administrator powerful tools to maintain their communication solutions and to drive down the total cost of ownership.

Administration Without Hardware (AWOH)

See [“Administration Without Hardware \(AWOH\)” on page 121.](#)

Alternate facility restriction levels

This feature allows Communication Manager to adjust facility restriction levels or authorization codes for lines or trunks. Each line or trunk is normally assigned a facility restriction level. With this feature, alternate facility restriction levels are also assigned. Attendants can change to the alternates, thus changing access to lines and trunks. You might want to use this feature to disable most long-distance calling at night, for example, to prevent unauthorized staff from making long-distance calls.

⚠ CAUTION:

This feature may change the AAR and ARS routing preferences. Using it on tandem and tie-trunk applications affects entire networks. Calls that are part of a cross-country private network may be blocked.

Announcements

The Announcements feature provides a recorded announcement to a variety of types of calls: calls that cannot be completed as dialed, calls that have been in queue for an assigned interval, any calls whose destination is an announcement, or incoming calls to a user.

Announcement sources for the G700 Media Gateway

This feature provides an announcement source for each G700 Media Gateway registered to either an S8300 or S8700 server.

With this feature, the S8700 Media Server supports 10 integrated announcement boards (TN750, TN2501, CWY1), plus an additional 250 G700 announcement sources (for a total of 260). The S8300 Media Server supports 50 G700 announcement sources.

NOTE:

The S8300 does not support standard port networks and TN-type boards. Also, the software resources for integrated boards and G700 sources are separated. The G700 announcement sources are counted separately towards its own limit of 50 on the S8300, and 250 on the S8700.

Avaya Voice Announcement over LAN (VAL)

Avaya Voice Announcement over LAN (VAL) incorporates the TN2501AP, an integrated announcement circuit pack that:

- plays announcements over the TDM bus, similar to the TN750C.
- has up to 1 hour of announcement storage time per circuit pack.
- has 33 ports (31 playback, 1 record, and 1 ethernet).
- supports a 10/100 Mb ethernet interface, allowing announcement and firmware file portability over a LAN (FTP server functions).
- supports generated .wav announcement files.

Avaya Voice Announcement over LAN (VAL) Manager

Avaya Voice Announcement over LAN (VAL) Manager is part of the Avaya Integrated Management suite of products. It enables you to the use of a LAN to transfer recorded announcements to Avaya media servers.

Announcements can be stored in .wav files, which can be sent to a voice announcement over LAN board without conversion. The voice announcement over LAN manager also provides a repository to backup and restore announcement files, and simplifies administration. With voice announcement over LAN manager, you can view the current status of announcements, easily add, change, and remove announcements, and copy and backup announcement files from Avaya media servers to the voice announcement over LAN manager and back, through the LAN.

Local announcements on the G700 Media Gateway

G700 local announcements — also known as virtual voice announcements over LAN (or virtual VAL) — allows twenty minutes total announcement time with fifteen playback channels with Communication Manager.

Avaya voice announcement over LAN (VAL) Manager, an application in the Avaya Integrated Management suite of products, is used to manage local announcements on the G700 Media Gateway.

Authorization codes — 13 digits

See [“Authorization codes — 13 digits” on page 187](#).

Automatic circuit assurance

Assists in identifying possible trunk problems. Communication Manager maintains a record of the performance of individual trunks and automatically calls a designated user when a possible failure is detected. This feature provides better service through early detection of faulty trunks and consequently reduces out-of-service time.

Automatic transmission measurement system

Measures voice and data trunk facilities for satisfactory transmission performance. The measurement report contains data on trunk signal loss, noise, signaling return loss, and echo return loss. Acceptable performance, the scheduling of tests, and report contents are administrable.

Barrier codes

A security code used with remote access to prevent unauthorized access to your system. To increase your system's security, use a 7-digit barrier code with remote access barrier code aging. A barrier code automatically expires if an expiration date or number of accesses has exceeded the limits you set. If both a time interval and access limits are administered for a barrier code, the barrier code expires when one of the conditions is satisfied.

 **NOTE:**

Barrier codes are not tracked by Call Detail Recording (CDR). Barrier codes are incoming access codes, whereas authorization codes are primarily outgoing access codes.

Bulletin board

Provides a place on the switch where you can post information and receive messages from other switch users, including Avaya personnel. Anyone with appropriate permissions can use the bulletin board for everyday messages. In addition, Avaya personnel can leave high-priority messages that are displayed on the first ten lines of the bulletin board.

Busy verification of telephones and trunks

Allows attendants and users of multi-appearance telephones to make test calls to trunks, telephones, and hunt groups to check the status of an apparently busy resource. With this feature, an attendant or multifunction telephone user can distinguish between a telephone that is truly busy and one that only appears busy because of some problem. You can also use the feature to quickly identify faulty trunks.

Call charge information

Provides two ways to know the approximate charge for calls made on outgoing trunks:

- **Advice of Charge — for ISDN trunks**
Advice of Charge (AOC) collects charge information from the public network for each outgoing call. Charge advice is a number representing the cost of a call; it is recorded as either a charging or currency unit.
- **Periodic pulse metering — for non-ISDN trunks**
Periodic Pulse Metering (PPM) accumulates pulses transmitted from the public network at periodic intervals during an outgoing trunk call. At the end of the call, the number of pulses collected is the basis for determining charges.

Call-charge information helps you to account for the cost of outgoing calls without waiting for the next bill from your network provider. This is especially important in countries where telephone bills are not itemized. You can also use this information to let employees know the cost of their phone calls, and so encourage them to help manage the company's telecommunications expenses.

 **NOTE:**

This feature is not offered by the public network in some countries, including the United States.

In addition, the pass advice of charge to BRI endpoints feature will transparently pass AOC information that has been received from PRI networks to WCBRI endpoints.

Call Detail Recording (CDR)

Records detailed call information on incoming and outgoing calls for the purpose of call accounting, and sends this call information to a Call Detail Recording (CDR) output device. You can specify the trunk groups and extensions for which you want records to be kept as well as the type of information to be recorded. You can keep track of both internal and external calls. This application contains a wide variety of administrable options and capabilities.

Call Detail Recording (CDR) display of physical extension

For Expert Agent Selection (EAS) agent-originated calls, if the `Record Agent ID on Outgoing?` field on the `CDR SYSTEM PARAMETERS` form is set to **y** (the default value), then the agent ID is used for outgoing calls.

If the `Record Agent ID on Outgoing?` field on the `CDR SYSTEM PARAMETERS` form is set to **n**, the physical extension is used.

Call restrictions

By dialing an access code, administrators and attendants have the ability to restrict users from making or receiving certain types of calls. There are five restrictions:

- Outward — user cannot place external calls.
- Station-to-station — user cannot place or receive internal calls.
- Termination — user cannot receive any calls (except priority calls).
- Toll — user cannot place toll calls but can place local calls.
- Total — user can neither place nor receive any calls.

Calling party/billing number (CPN/BN)

Allows the system to transmit calling party number/billing number (CPN/BN) information to an ISDN-PRI trunk group. The CPN is the calling party's telephone number. BN is the calling party's billing number. The CPN/BN may contain international country codes. It is used with an adjunct application.

Class of Restriction (COR)

See [“Class of Restriction \(COR\)” on page 187](#).

Class of Service (COS)

Defines whether or not telephone users have permission to access the following features and functions:

- Automatic callback
- Call forwarding
- Data privacy
- Priority calling
- Restrict call forwarding off-net
- Call forward busy/don't answer
- Extended forwarding and busy/don't answer
- Personal station access
- Trunk-to-trunk transfer restriction override
- Off-hook alert
- Console permission
- Client room

Classless Interdomain Routing (CIDR)

See [“Classless Interdomain Routing \(CIDR\)” on page 153](#).

Concurrent user sessions

In order to increase the efficiency of administration and maintenance functions, the Communication Manager accommodates multiple concurrent administration and maintenance user sessions. Three or more devices (management terminals or operation support systems) can be connected to the switch to perform administration and/or maintenance tasks simultaneously.

Communication Manager supports eight concurrent administration and maintenance users — five can perform concurrent administration, and three can perform concurrent maintenance. The eight concurrent sessions can be in any combination of local and remote connections.

Customer-provided equipment alarm

See [“Customer-provided equipment alarm” on page 188.](#)

Customer telephone activation (CTA)

Enables customers to install their own phones, eliminating the need for a service technician to do the installation. This feature is based on the TTI feature and allows the customer to associate a physical phone with a station translations switch.

CTA is a streamlined version of TTI; it has a fixed feature-access code but does not require a security code. In addition, CTA allows only for “merging” of phones with station translations, whereas TTI allows for both “merging” and “unmerging” of phones with station translations.

CTA applies only to DCP and analog touch-tone, circuit-switched phones.

DCS automatic circuit assurance

Allows a user or attendant at one node to activate or deactivate automatic circuit assurance referral calls for the entire DCS network. This transparency allows the referral calls to originate at a node other than the node that detects the problem.

External device alarming

Allows you to assign analog ports to alarm interfaces for external devices. You can specify a port location, information to identify the external device, and the alarm level to report when a contact closure occurs.

Facility busy indication

Allows users of multi-appearance telephones to see which lines, trunk groups, terminating extension groups, hunt groups, or paging zones (called resources or facilities) are busy. When the lamp associated with the resource is lit, the resource is busy.

You can store extension numbers, trunk group access codes, and loudspeaker paging access codes in a facility busy indication button. The facility busy indication button provides direct access to any of the facilities.

Facility restriction levels and traveling class marks

Allows certain calls to specific users, while denying the same calls to other users. For example, certain users may be allowed to use central office (CO) trunks to other corporate locations while other users may be restricted to less expensive private-network lines. You can administer up to eight levels of restriction for users of AAR and ARS.

Facility test calls

Allows telephone users to make test calls to access specific trunks, dual tone multifrequency receivers, time slots, and system tones. The user dials an access code and makes the test call to make sure the facility is operating properly. Security measures are included to prevent unauthorized use.

Firmware download

The firmware download feature makes it possible to download an image from a remote or local source into the system running Communication Manager, and use that image to reprogram the application code of a port circuit pack. This feature makes updating firmware more cost effective. It also reduces the expense of servicing the system's port circuit packs because it eliminates the need for a technician to be involved when a board is updated. Firmware download is achieved using the TN799C CLAN interface.

⇒ NOTE:

Circuit packs that can be updated with the firmware download feature have a "P" at the end of their TN number.

Five EPN maximum in MCC1 Media Gateways

⇒ NOTE:

This feature is for MCC1 Media Gateways when used with an S8700 Media Server or DEFINITY® Server R configurations only.

This optional software feature allows customers that require high calling traffic capacities to have from two to five expansion port networks (EPN) in a single MCC1 Media Gateway. Only two port networks (PN) are generally available unless a specialized cable was purchased from Avaya and work-arounds were performed in software administration to make additional carriers function as EPNs.

When this feature is activated, Communication Manager enables administration of up to five carriers as EPNs and no custom cables are necessary. This means that the full bandwidth of the TDM bus is available to each carrier while still enabling the customer to have the footprint of an MCC1 Media Gateway. This is especially appealing to call centers without IPSI/PNC duplication, where systems can be quite large and heavily utilized.

The hardware limitation of the MCC1 Media Gateway is five port carriers. All five can be expansion port carriers, although traffic considerations may dictate some number less than that which is optimum. For example, a customer may choose to have three EPN carriers and two standard port carriers.

There is only one maintenance board, which is placed in carrier A. This is the only maintenance board in the cabinet.

⇒ NOTE:

Only two PNs are physically supported in S8700 Media Server IPSI-enabled systems when high/critical reliability options are desired. Only two PNs are physically supported in DEFINITY Server R systems when critical/ATM Network Duplication reliability is desired.

The following table shows the number of port networks allowed in an MCC1 Media Gateway.

Number of Port Networks allowed in an MCC1 Media Gateway

	DEFINITY Server R				S8700 Media Server (all IPSI-enabled PNs)		
	Std	High	Critical	ATM Net Dup	Duplex	High	Critical
1 PN	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
2 PN	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
3 PN	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes	No	No
4 PN	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes	No	No
5 PN	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes	No	No

For more information on this feature, see your local Avaya representative.

Information and reports

- Attendant position report

The attendant position report lists the following:

- Attendant usage
- Number of calls answered
- Total time the attendant was available to answer a new call
- Average holding time on calls answered

- Blockage study report

- Call coverage reports

The call coverage report displays measurements of the distribution of traffic offered to call-coverage groups. Separate reports for all calls and external calls are supplied.

- Coverage points report

The coverage points report differs based on whether all calls or external calls is selected. For each coverage point in the group, the number of calls offered, abandoned while at that coverage point, and overflowing to the next coverage point are listed.

- Display ARP reports

- Emergency and journal reports

The emergency and journal report is based on information from all crisis alerts.

- Hunt group measurements report

- IP reports

- Packet error history report

Provides a 24-hour history of important packet level statistics that indirectly indicate some LAN performance characteristics. The 24-hour history gives the ability to look back at these measures if the trouble cleared.

- Port network and link usage report

- Processor occupancy report

The processor occupancy report provides summary information on how heavily the processor is loaded.

- Recent change history report
Allows the system manager to view or print a history report of the most recent administration and maintenance changes on the switch. This report may be used for diagnostic or information purposes.
- Refresh route reports
- Summary report
The summary report provides a performance summary of your system running Communication Manager.
- Tandem traffic report
The tandem traffic report provides information on facilities that serve tandem traffic.
- Tracelog
The Tracelog, among other things, lists:
 - all IP endpoint registrations
 - all IP endpoint unregistrations
 - all Ethernet interfaces coming into service
 - all Ethernet interfaces coming out of serviceThese events are tagged as a new log type.
- Traffic reports
Traffic reports show measurements in the form of switch-based reports for local or remote access, and can be collected for subsequent analysis and reporting by adjuncts and operation support systems using the operation support system interface protocol.
- Trunk group detailed measurements

Parsing capabilities for the history report

The history report provides details about every data command. You can use parsing options to limit the data returned in this report. The following table identifies the parsing options that are available.

⇒ NOTE:

You can display these options by entering the command **list history**, then clicking **HELP** or pressing **F5**.

Option	Description
date	Specify the month (MM) or day (MM/DD) for which to display history data.
time	Specify the hour (HH) or minute (HH:MM) for which to display history data.
login	Specify the login for which you wish to display history data.
action	Specify the command action (the first word of the command string) for which you wish to display history data. You can view the list of available command actions by clicking HELP or pressing F5 at the command line.
object	Specify the command object for which you wish to display history data.
qualifier	Specify the command qualifier for which you wish to display history data.

To limit the data displayed in the history report, enter the command **list history** followed by a space and the appropriate parser and, if applicable, format. Only the data for the specified parsers will appear in the report.

You can include multiple parsers, but only a single instance of any parser (for example, you may parse for **date**, **time**, and **login**, but not for **date**, **time**, and two different **logins**).

IP asynchronous links

See [“IP asynchronous links” on page 171](#).

Malicious call trace

See [“Malicious call trace” on page 189](#).

Malicious call trace logging

See [“Malicious call trace logging” on page 189](#).

Music-on-hold

Automatically provides music, silence, or tone to a caller. Music lets the caller know that the connection is still valid.

Local music-on-hold

The music on hold feature is supported on the G700 Media Gateway with Communication Manager. The music source is connected to a port on the MM711 Analog Media Module. Local music-on-hold is part of the call center functionality on the S8300 Media Server.

Local music-on-hold allows one music source. To use multiple music sources on a G700 Media Gateway, you must use multiple ports on the MM711 Analog Media Module, one for each music source.

For more information, see the *Installation for Adjuncts and Peripherals for Avaya Communication Manager*, 555-233-116. Also see the *Administrator's Guide for Avaya Communication Manager*, 555-233-506.

Multiple music sources

On an MCC1, SCC1, CMC1, or G600 Media Gateway, this feature allows the customer to provide multiple distinct music sources for use with the call vectoring features, calls placed on hold, calls awaiting pickup, and so on. By purchasing the multiple music-on-hold (also called tenant partitioning) feature, you can have up to 100 music sources.

Many different music options can be administered to accommodate different tenants. See [“Tenant partitioning” on page 215](#).

Restriction — controlled

Allows an attendant or telephone user, with console permission, to activate and deactivate for an individual telephone or a group of telephones, the following restrictions:

- outward
- total
- station-to-station
- termination restrictions

Scheduling

Functional scheduling in Communication Manager allows you to specify the time a command will be executed or to specify that it should be executed on a periodic basis. Only commands that do not require user interaction after being entered on the command line (such as list, display, test) can be scheduled.

Security Violation Notification (SVN)

See [“Security Violation Notification \(SVN\)” on page 192.](#)

Station security codes

See [“Station security codes” on page 192.](#)

Tenant partitioning

Allows partitioning of the system in order to lease the system’s services and features to tenants. This provides attractive services and revenue for “virtual” landlords. It provides the robust features of a large system at affordable rates to small business tenants. Communication Manager supports up to 100 partitions and 27 attendant groups.

Multiple attendant groups can be assigned to each partition. Stations, hunt groups, and other endpoints assigned to a Class of Service (COS) can be partitioned. Network routing pattern preferences also support the assigned tenant partitioning. Tenant partitioning also allows you to assign a unique music source for each tenant partition for customers who are put on hold.

See [“Music-on-hold” on page 214.](#)

Terminal Translation Initialization (TTI)

See [“Terminal Translation Initialization \(TTI\)” on page 127.](#)

Time of day clock synchronization through a LAN source

Customers need accurate and common time of day time source across multiple switches in a network. This is especially important when customers are using a central Avaya Call Management System (CMS) to report events coming from multiple servers running Communication Manager.

The time of day clock synchronization through a LAN source feature is implemented on two different platforms:

- Linux
- UNIX

Linux platforms

Communication Manager running on Linux-based media servers, such as the Avaya S8300 media server or the Avaya S8700 media server, synchronizes time directly from a LAN source such as a server.

UNIX platforms

Communication Manager running on DEFINITY servers which use an Oryx/Pecos operating system (proprietary UNIX-based OS) receives a command from Avaya site administration to adjust the time. Avaya site administration is synchronized to the LAN PC's clock.

Trunk group circuits

Trunks provide the communications links between Communication Manager and other switches, including central office switches and other premises switches. Trunks that perform the same function are grouped together and administered as trunk groups. Trunks interface with Communication Manager through port circuit packs.

Variable length ping

See [“Variable length ping” on page 160.](#)

Variable Length Subnet Mask (VLSM)

See [“Variable Length Subnet Mask \(VLSM\)” on page 161.](#)

Avaya Integrated Management

Avaya Integrated Management is a systems management software suite that contains applications to manage a converged voice and data network. The applications include:

- network management
- fault management
- performance management
- configuration management
- directory management
- policy management functionality

ATM WAN Spare Processor (WSP) Manager

ATM WAN Spare Processor (WSP) Manager can be a key part of your emergency restoration and business continuity planning. This application enables users to download translations from a main server running Communication Manager, and simultaneously upload those translations to multiple (up to 15) ATM WAN Spare Processors (WSPs) over a LAN connectivity. This can be done according to a schedule specified by the administrator. You can schedule translations to run once now, or for a specified time and date in the future. You can also schedule regular daily or weekly updates.

The module also provides the ability to schedule regular daily or weekly updates of the Communication Manager translations. The ATM WAN Spare Processor Manager provides the current status of the main server running Communication Manager and any defined WSP devices in the network. A complete history log is created listing each of the switches, and the time and the resulting message from the scheduled action. On-line help is embedded into the module for ease of use.

Avaya Communication Manager configuration manager

Avaya configuration manager provides centralized management of distributed network and campus environments, using a single point of entry and graphical Web-based interface for configuration and administration of multiple Avaya media servers.

Avaya Communication Manager fault/performance manager

Communication Manager fault/performance manager integrates with Avaya multiservice network manager to provide a system view of your converged network. Fault manager displays a hierarchical view of devices and their status, allowing you to view and isolate alarms and errors. Performance manager provides a comprehensive set of performance reports for trending and isolation of performance issues.

Avaya site administration

Avaya site administration is a Microsoft Windows-based graphical user interface for making changes, adding or moving users, and performing basic traffic analysis.

Avaya voice announcement over LAN (VAL) manager

See [“Avaya Voice Announcement over LAN \(VAL\) Manager” on page 202](#).

Avaya VoIP Monitoring Manager (VMON)

Avaya VoIP monitoring manager (VMON) provides the ability to monitor voice over IP (VoIP) network quality. This web-based application receives QoS statistics from Avaya IP end points and displays the data via graphs and reports, so administrators can isolate voice quality problems and send traps when poor voice quality is detected.

Directory

Allows users with display-equipped telephones to access the system database, use the touch-tone buttons to enter a name, and retrieve an extension number from the system directory. The directory contains the names and extensions assigned to all telephones on the system.

Administration change notification

Enables Communication Manager to communicate with the Avaya Directory Enabled Management (DEM) client. This feature enables the client to have real-time, integrated, directory-based, read/write access to Communication Manager administration data based on rules defined by the customer. Administration change notification enables the client to subscribe to notifications of changes to administration data in Communication Manager. It thus provides real-time updates whenever administration changes occur in a particular object (for example, a station).

Avaya Directory Enabled Management

Avaya Directory Enabled Management (DEM) is part of the Avaya Integrated Management suite of products. It provides real-time, integrated, directory-based read/write access to Avaya media servers and INTUITY AUDIX messaging servers. It streamlines workflow and information management in an electronic environment using converged networks.

DEM creates a meta-directory for converged voice and data networks. It synchronizes directory information with data from Communication Manager and INTUITY devices, and stores the information in an LDAP-compliant directory service (for example, Novell's eDirectory or Microsoft's active directory). Directory-enabled applications can then use the DEM to implement workflow processes that automate various system management functions and speed business operations.

Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP)

Lightweight Directory Access Protocol version 3 (LDAPv3) is an industry compliant protocol for accessing online directory services. A directory is like a database, but tends to contain more description information. Communication Manager integrates with LDAP datastores through the use of the administration change notification feature and Avaya directory enabled management client application to provide real-time, integrated, directory-based read/write access to Communication Manager and INTUITY AUDIX messaging servers.

**Avaya R300 remote office
communicator (R300)**

The R300 feature offers a cost-effective method for providing full functionality at a remote site. The R300 provides remote telephony that has all the capabilities of telephony that is connected directly. Through the R300, voice and data can share the same WAN link between Avaya Communication Manager and the remote site, thus providing voice and data convergence.

The R300 acts like a simple switch at the remote site to connect remote stations and local access trunks. It supports VoIP and DCP, as well as analog line and trunk connections. In addition, each R300 unit supports 12 remote dial access data channels. A single Communication Manager switch can support multiple R300 units. The number of units supported by Communication Manager varies according to the system model type.

If the R300 should go down for any reason, a minor alarm is generated. How soon you are notified of the minor alarm can be set from the REMOTE MAX ALARM field on the SET OPTIONS form. Minor alarms can be generated anywhere from fifteen minutes to two hours from the time the disruption occurred.

Coverage of calls redirected off-net (CCRON)

Coverage of calls redirected off-net (CCRON) allows calls that have been redirected to locations outside of the switch to return to the switch for further processing.

For example, an employee that telecommutes can have two coverage paths. One coverage path is used when the employee is in the office and the other coverage path is used when the employee is working from home. The coverage path used from home would have a call to the employee's work phone cover to his or her home phone. If the employee does not answer the call or is busy on another call, the call is redirected back to the switch for further processing, such as coverage to voice mail.

Remote call coverage and call forwarding off-net allow calls to be redirected to a remote location. This allows you to have calls placed to your on-site office redirected to your home office. You can administer the system to either monitor calls and bring them back for additional processing if not answered or to leave calls at the remote (off-net) location.

Extended user administration of redirected calls (telecommuting access)

Extended user administration of redirected calls (also called telecommuting access) allows you to change the lead call coverage path or forwarding extension from any on-site or off-site location. Thus you can change the path or extension from your home office, for example.

IP Softphone and IP Agent — RoadWarrior mode

See [“IP Softphone and IP Agent — RoadWarrior mode” on page 93](#).

IP Softphone and IP Agent — Shared Control mode

See [“IP Softphone and IP Agent — Shared Control mode” on page 93](#).

IP Softphone and IP Agent — Telecommuter mode

See [“IP Softphone and IP Agent — Telecommuter mode” on page 94](#).

IP Softphone

See [“Avaya IP Softphone” on page 92](#).

Off-premises station

A trunk-data module connects off-premises private-line trunk facilities and Communication Manager. The trunk-data module converts between the RS-232C and the DCP, and can connect to DDD modems as the DCP member of a modem pool.

See [“Call redirection” on page 229](#) and [“Call vectoring” on page 66](#).

Remote access

Permits authorized callers from remote locations to access the system via the public network and then use its features and services. There are a variety of ways of accessing the feature. After gaining access, you hear a system dial tone, and, for system security, may be required to dial a barrier code.

Abbreviated Dialing (AD)

Abbreviated Dialing (AD) provides lists of stored numbers you can use to:

- Place local, long-distance, and international calls
- Activate features
- Access remote computer equipment

You simply dial the list number and the one-digit, two-digit, or three-digit number associated with the telephone number you want. The number is then automatically dialed by the system. A frequently called number can be stored on an abbreviated dialing button that you need only press once to make the call.

Abbreviated dialing labeling

Labeling of abbreviated dialing (AD) buttons on softkeys allows users of the 2420 DCP telephone, as well as the 4600-series, 6400-series, and 8400-series display telephone sets, to administer labels for the AD buttons that appear on their softkeys. These personalized labels appear on the menu display. These labels apply to any AD buttons you have administered on the 2420 DCP and the 4620 IP telephones.

Abbreviated dialing on-hook programming

On-hook programming allows users of the 2420 DCP telephone, as well as the 4600-series, 6400-series, and 8400-series telephone sets with enabled speakers, to access the programming mode without going off-hook during available call appearances. Signaling changes from DTMF to the S-channel, allowing the use of a longer (60 seconds) time-out period. Signaling will remain DTMF and the current time-out period of 10 seconds will still apply to non-display telephone sets.

Active dialing

6400-series and 4600-series telephone sets have a dialing option where the set will send S-channel button codes when the user presses a number on the dial pad when on-hook.

Administrable timeout on call timer

Enhances the call timer feature on the 6400-series telephones. The call timer feature measures the duration of a call, starting a timer when the call is answered and stopping the timer when the call is dropped.

Previously, the call timer feature displayed the duration of the call for only five seconds after the call was dropped. The administrable timeout on call timer feature allows the user to specify how long to display the duration of the call.

Alphanumeric dialing

See [“Alphanumeric dialing” on page 97](#).

Automatic Call Back (ACB)

Automatic Call Back (ACB) allows internal users who placed a call to a busy or unanswered internal telephone to be called back automatically when the called telephone becomes available.

When a user activates automatic callback, the system monitors the called telephone. When the called telephone becomes available to receive a call, the system originates the automatic callback call. The originating party receives priority ringing. The calling party then lifts the handset and the called party receives the same ringing provided on the original call.

Automatic Call Back (ACB) for analog telephones

When a person, using an analog telephone, places a call and the line is busy, an announcement prompts the caller to enter the digit 1 to activate ACB, or to enter the digit 2 to route the call to a hunt group extension.

Automatic hold

Allows attendants and multi-function telephone users to alternate easily between two or more calls. For example, with automatic hold, selection of a second call automatically puts the active call (if any) on hold and makes the second call active. This feature can be activated on a system-wide basis only. When automatic hold is not activated, the selection of the second call drops the first call.

Bellcore calling name ID

Allows the system to accept calling name information from a Local Exchange Carrier (LEC) network that supports the Bellcore calling name specification. The system can send calling name information in the format if Bellcore calling name ID is administered. The following caller ID protocols are supported.

- Bellcore (default) - US protocol (Bellcore transmission protocol with 212 modem protocol)
- V23-Bell - Bahrain protocol (Bellcore transmission protocol with V.23 modem protocol).

Bridged call appearance — multi-appearance telephone

Allows calls made to or from a primary telephone user's extension number to be handled from more than one telephone. A bridged call appearance is set up by administering a primary extension and the button number associated with it on a multi-lamp button on another telephone. This feature is most often used by secretaries or assistants who answer or handle calls to the primary extension (an executive, for example).

When the primary extension receives a call, the bridged call appearance flashes or rings on all telephones administered with this feature. The call can be answered by anyone having a telephone with this feature and handled as if the primary extension user was answering it. The maximum number of bridged appearances is 64.

Bridged call appearance — single-line telephone

Allows single-line telephones users to have a bridged appearance on a multi-appearance telephone.

Call coverage

Call coverage provides automatic redirection of calls that meet specified criteria to alternate answering positions in a call coverage path. A coverage path can include any of the following:

- a telephone
- an attendant group
- a Uniform Call Distribution (UCD) hunt group
- a Direct Department Calling (DDC) hunt group
- an Automatic Call Distribution (ACD) hunt group
- a voice messaging system
- a Coverage Answer Group (CAG) established to answer redirected calls

Alphanumeric field designation

In addition to numeric designations for key system lists and groups of related information, the system administrator can specify alphanumeric designations, 0-15 characters in length, for the following:

- abbreviated dial lists
- abbreviated dial groups
- call pickup groups
- call routing patterns

Changeable coverage paths

Changeable coverage paths allows the end user to modify the coverage points by using a feature access code (FAC).

Time of day

This feature allows a user to have multiple coverage paths depending on the time of day, and day of the week.

Call redirection

Call forward busy/don't answer

Allows calls to be forwarded when the called extension is busy or when the call is not answered after an administrable interval. If the extension is busy, the call forwards immediately. If the extension is not busy, the incoming call rings the called extension, then forwards only if it remains unanswered longer than the administered interval.

Call forwarding all calls

Allows calls to be forwarded to an internal extension, external (off-net) number, an attendant, or an attendant group. You can include an access code or special characters — like pause characters — in the forwarding destination.

Call forwarding override

Allows the user at the forwarded-to extension to override call forwarding and either initiate a call or transfer a call back to the forwarded-from extension.

Call redirection intervals

Communication Manager allows the system administrator to specify the number of times that a call rings at each call coverage point before the call proceeds to the next coverage point.

Call park

Allows you to put a call on hold and then retrieve a call from any other telephone on the system. This is helpful when you are on a call and need to go to another location for information. It also allows you to answer a call from any telephone after being paged by a telephone user or an attendant.

Call pickup

Along with directed call pickup, allows you to answer calls for other telephones within your specified call pickup group. Directed call pickup allows you to pick up any call on the system. With this feature, you do not have to leave your telephone to answer a call for a nearby telephone. You simply dial an access code or press a call pickup button.

Group call pickup

Allows you to dial a feature access code (FAC) and a pickup group number to answer a call from a different group. For example, marketing would be able to pickup calls in the sales group when the sales group is unavailable. This feature is ideal for offices that are not divided by partitions and generally have the departments on the same floor.

Caller ID (ICLID) on analog trunks

See [“Caller ID \(ICLID\) on analog trunks” on page 147.](#)

Caller ID (ICLID) on digital trunks

See [“Caller ID \(ICLID\) on digital trunks” on page 147.](#)

Circular station hunt group

See [“Circular station hunt group” on page 69.](#)

Conferencing

See [“Conferencing” on page 77.](#)

Consult

Allows a covering user, after answering a call received through call coverage, to call the called party for private consultation. Consult can be used to let a covering user ask the principal if they want to speak with the calling party.

Coverage callback

Allows a covering user to leave a message for the called party to call back the person who called.

Coverage incoming call identification

Allows multi-appearance telephones users without a display in a coverage answer group to identify an incoming call to that group.

Disconnecting unanswered calls

Disconnects unanswered outgoing calls after a predetermined amount of time. When any of the following timers expire during an outgoing local, toll, or international call attempt, the switch disconnects the call and applies busy tone, which may or may not be followed by howler tone:

- Pre-dialing and interdigit timer
- Outgoing seizure acknowledge timer
- Answer supervision timer
- 60-, 90-, and 120-second no-answer disconnect timers, based on ARS call type
- 120-second timer used for calls without a call type, such as calls to trunk access codes

Distinctive ringing

Rings or activates alerting on your telephone in such a way that you are aware of the type of incoming call before answering it. This feature operates in a Distributed Communications System (DCS) environment the same as it does within a single system.

By default, internal calls are identified by a 1-burst ringing pattern, external calls by a 2-burst ringing pattern, and priority calls by a 3-burst ringing pattern. You can administer these patterns, however.

Enhanced abbreviated dialing

Supplements abbreviated dialing by providing one enhanced number per system. Enhanced number lists can contain any number or dial access code. System administrators designate privileges for group number lists, system number lists and enhanced number lists. With privileged lists, users can access otherwise restricted numbers (for example, stations without long-distance access can be programmed to access specified long-distance numbers).

The S8700 Media Server supports 20,000 entries within the enhanced abbreviated dialing system list. This second enhanced abbreviated dialing list doubles the capacity to from 10,000 entries to 20,000 entries.

Future increases to the enhanced abbreviated dialing list can be performed easily by increasing the number of lists. Increasing the number of lists increases the overall capacity by multiples of 10,000 entries.

Enhanced telephone display

The enhanced telephone display feature allows you to choose the character set that you want to see in Communication Manager softkeys and display telephones. In addition to the standard Roman character set, you can choose either the Katakana or characters used for most European languages.

Go to cover

Allows users who call another internal extension to send the call directly to coverage.

Hold

Allows you to disconnect from a call temporarily, use your telephone for other call purposes, and then return to the original call.

Intercom — automatic answer

Automatic answer intercom calls (auto answer ICOM) allows a user to answer an intercom call within the intercom group without pressing the intercom button. Auto answer ICOM works with digital, BRI, and hybrid phones with built-in speaker, headphones, or adjunct speakerphone.

Internal automatic answer

Allows specific telephones to answer incoming internal calls automatically. This feature is intended for use with telephones that have speakerphones or headsets. You simply press an internal automatic answer feature button, and calls are automatically answered when the telephone is idle. Internal and Distributed Communications System (DCS) calls can be answered using automatic answer, but only attendants can use automatic answer to answer external calls directed to the attendant.

Last number dialed

Allows you to automatically redial the last number dialed. The system saves the first 24-digits of the last number dialed, whether the call attempt was manually dialed or dialed using abbreviated dialing. When you press the last number dialed button or dial the last number dialed feature access code, the system places the call again.

Local call timer automatic start/stop

Automatically starts the local timer of a 6400-series telephone when a call is received. The timer is stopped automatically when a call is ended. When a call is placed on hold the timer continues to run, but is not displayed. When the call comes off hold, the total elapsed call-time displays.

Long hold recall

Visual and audible warnings are sent to the telephone where a call has been on hold past a specified period of time. Both visual and audible warnings are used if the telephone is on-hook. If the telephone is off-hook, a “priority ring” is used. This is an optional feature at the system level.

Manual originating line service

Connects single-line telephone users to the attendant automatically when the user lifts the handset. The attendant number is stored in an abbreviated dialing list. When the telephone user lifts the handset, the system automatically routes the call to the attendant using the hot line service feature.

Misoperation handling

Defines how calls are handled when a misoperation occurs. A misoperation is when calls are left on hold when the controlling station goes on hook.

For example, a misoperation can occur under either of the following conditions:

- If you hang up prior to completing a feature operation (in some cases, hanging up completes the operation, as in call transfer). If, for example, you place a call on hold, begin to transfer the call, dial an invalid extension number, and then hang up, that's a misoperation.
- When the system enters night service while attendant consoles have calls on hold.

The system administrator can alter the standard misoperation handling to ensure that an external caller is not left on hold indefinitely, or dropped by the system after a misoperation with no way to reach someone for help.

NOTE:

This feature is required only in France and Italy, but it can be used at any location where the feature has been turned on.

Multiappearance preselection and preference

Provides options for placing or answering calls on selected call appearances.

- Ringing appearance preference automatically connects you to the incoming ringing call when the user picks up the handset.
- Idle appearance preference automatically connects you to an idle appearance.
- Preselection allows the user to manually select an appearance. Preselection is used, for example, when you want to reconnect with a held call or activate a feature.

Preselection can be used with a feature button. For example, if you press an abbreviated dialing button, the call appearance is automatically selected and, if you pick up the handset within five seconds, the call is automatically placed. The preselection option overrides both of the other preference options.

Multiple level precedence and preemption (MLPP)

Multiple level precedence and preemption (MLPP) is an optional group of features that provide users the ability to interface to and operate in a Defense Switched Network (DSN). The DSN is a highly secure and standards-based communication system of the US Government's Department of Defense (DoD).

CAUTION:

MLPP is currently designed to meet only DoD GSCR requirements for connection to a DSN by federal, state, or local government agencies. As such, MLPP is not currently designed for use in commercial enterprise environments. Activation of this feature in any other kind of network environment could result in unexpected and unwanted feature operations.

The MLPP features allow users to request priority processing of their calls during critical situations. The MLPP features include:

- [Announcements for precedence calling](#)
- [Dual homing](#)
- [End office access line hunting](#)
- [Line load control](#)
- [Precedence call waiting](#)
- [Precedence calling](#)
- [Precedence routing](#)
- [Preemption](#)
- [Worldwide numbering and dialing plan \(WNDP\)](#)

Announcements for precedence calling

In certain situations, precedence calls are blocked because of unavailable resources or improper use. When this occurs, recorded announcements are used to identify what went wrong. The announcements used for MLPP include:

- Blocked precedence call
- Unauthorized precedence level attempted
- Service interruption prevented call completion
- Busy, not equipped for preemption or precedence call waiting
- Vacant code

Dual homing

Dual homing allows a user to dial a telephone number and, if the initial route is unavailable, have the call route to its destination over alternate facilities.

End office access line hunting

End office access line hunting automatically hunts for an idle trunk over end office access lines, based on the precedence level of the call.

Line load control

Line load control is a feature that restricts a predefined set of station users from originating calls during a crisis or emergency. Through administration, users are assigned to a line load control level based on their relative importance. When an emergency occurs, the administrator manually enables the feature to restrict calling by users of lower importance. When the emergency is over, the administrator manually disables the feature.

For example, if a situation occurs that threatens national defense, station users in the defense department will not be restricted from originating calls, but stations in other departments, such as the accounting department, will be restricted. When the crisis is over, the system can be returned to normal operation by the administrator.

Precedence call waiting

After a precedence call is routed, the called party may already be busy on another call. Precedence call waiting allows the caller to “camp on” to the called party’s line and wait for them to answer the call. The caller hears a special ringback tone and the called party hears a call waiting tone.

Depending on the type of telephone being used, the called party can put the current call on hold and answer the call, or the called party must hang up on their current call to answer the incoming call.

Precedence calling

Precedence calling is the centerpiece of the MLPP features. Precedence calling allows users, on a call-by-call basis, to select a level of priority for each call based on their need and importance (rank). The call receives higher-priority routing, whether the call is local or going around the world.

Users may access five levels of precedence when placing calls:

- Flash Override (the highest precedence level)

- Flash
- Immediate
- Priority
- Routine (the default, and lowest precedence level)

Each station user is administered with a maximum precedence level — the more important or higher in rank the user, the higher the precedence level. Users cannot originate calls at precedence levels higher than their maximum administered level. Non-MLPP calls are treated as routine level precedence calls.

Precedence routing

When precedence calls are destined for other switches in a private network, the precedence routing feature is used to route the calls. The precedence routing feature routes calls based on three main criteria:

- Routing based on the destination number
- Routing based on the precedence level
- Routing based on the time of day

These routing criteria are administrable and can be changed as required. Two related features are dual homing and end office access line hunting.

Preemption

Preemption works with the precedence routing feature to further extend the call routing capabilities of the MLPP features. Preemption, when allowed through administration, can actually tear down an existing lower priority call in order to complete a more important precedence call. Even non-MLPP calls are treated as routine level precedence calls and can be preempted.

When this occurs, the callers on the existing call hear a tone indicating that the call is about to be preempted. The callers have three seconds to end the call before the call is automatically disconnected. After the existing call is disconnected, the new call is placed using preempted facility.

Worldwide numbering and dialing plan (WNDP)

The worldwide numbering and dialing plan (WNDP) feature allows Communication Manager to conform to the standard numbering system established by the Defense Communications Agency (DCA). WNDP defines its own format for the precedence dialing. The capability to operate with this numbering plan must be incorporated into all new switches introduced into the Defense Switched Network (DSN).

Night service

There are five night service features:

- Hunt group night service allows an attendant or a split supervisor to assign a hunt group or split to night service mode. All calls for the hunt group then are redirected to the hunt group's designated night service extension. When a user activates hunt group night service, the associated button lamp lights.
- Night console service directs all calls for primary and daytime attendant consoles to a night console. When a user activates night console service, the night service button for each attendant lights and all attendant-seeking calls (and calls waiting) in the queue are directed to the night console. To activate and deactivate this feature, the attendant typically presses the night button on the principal attendant console or designated console.
- Night station service directs incoming calls for the attendant to designated extensions. Attendants can activate night station service by pressing the night button on the principle console if there is not an active night console. If the night station is busy, calls (including emergency attendant calls) receive a busy tone. They do not queue for the attendant.
- Trunk answer from any station allows telephone users to answer all incoming calls to the attendant when the attendant is not on duty and when other telephones have not been designated to answer the calls. The incoming call activates a gong, bell, or chime and a voice-terminal user dials an access code to answer the call.
- Trunk group night service allows an attendant or a designated telephone user to individually assign a trunk group or all trunk groups to the night service mode. Specific trunk groups individually assigned to the service are in Individual trunk night service mode. Calls coming into these trunk groups are redirected to designated night service extensions. Incoming calls on other trunk groups are processed normally.

Enhanced night service

Communication Manager informs a voice mail system (VMS) that it is in night service, allowing the VMS to perform different actions and call handling for out-of-hours operation. For example, the VMS may be administered to provide recorded announcements after hours. The enhancement is made to the mode code voice mail interface.

Personalized ringing

Allows users of certain telephones to uniquely identify their own calls. Each user can choose one of a number of possible ringing patterns. The eight ringing patterns are tone sequences consisting of different combinations of three tones. With this feature, users working closely in the same area can each specify a different ringing pattern in order to better identify their own calls.

Posted messages

In most situations, after a few rings when no one answers a call, the calling party usually hears an announcement saying that the called party is not available and to please leave a message. At this point, the calling party has no clue when the called party would return the call.

The posted messages feature provides Communication Manager users with the capability of indicating the reason of their unavailability to calling parties. The system provides 30 messages for a user to choose from, such as “on vacation,” or “at lunch.” Of the 30 messages, 15 messages are fixed system messages, and the remaining 15 messages are administrable (custom messages). After a user has chosen one of the messages and thus activated the feature, the message is immediately sent to calling parties who have terminal displays.

The system provides two ways to activate/deactivate this feature: using button pushes and feature access codes. The system allows users to use the feature access codes from their own display telephone, from another station/attendant, or from a remote access trunk.

Priority calling

Allows you to ring another telephone with a distinctive signal that tells the called party the incoming call requires immediate attention. The called party can then handle the call accordingly. You activate priority calling by dialing a priority calling access code or pressing a feature button, followed by the extension number. You can use priority calling only if your telephone has been administered with the required class of service.

Pull transfer

Allows either the party who was originally called, or the party to whom the held call will be transferred, to complete the transfer. This is a convenient way to connect a party with someone better qualified to handle the call. Attendant assistance is not required and the call does not have to be redialed. It interfaces with satellite workstations through TGU/TGE trunks and is always available for calls that use TGU/TGE trunks.

Recall signaling

Recall signaling allows the user of an analog station to place a call on hold, use the telephone for other call purposes, and then return to the original call.

Recorded telephone dictation access

Allows telephone users, including remote access and incoming tie trunk users, to access dictation equipment. The dictation equipment is accessed by dialing an access code or extension number. The start/stop function can be voice or dial controlled. Other functions such as initial activation and playback are controlled by additional dial codes.

Reset shift call

If a call number is busy and doesn't have coverage or the called number and the coverage are both busy, you have an opportunity to replace the last digit that was entered. This allows you to call another extension without having to hang up and redial. Reset shift call is a feature that is active for station to station (internal) calls and for private network calls. The private network trunks must signal busy using out-of-band signaling.

Ringback queuing

Places calls in an ordered queue (first in, first out) when all trunks are busy. The telephone user who is trying to make a call is automatically called back when a trunk becomes available, and hears a distinctive three-burst signal when called back.

Ringer cutoff

Allows the user of a multi-appearance telephone to turn audible ringing signals on and off. Visual alerting is not affected by this feature. When this feature is enabled, only priority (three-burst) ring, redirect notification, intercom ring, and manual signaling ring at the telephone. Internal and external calls do not ring.

Ringing — abbreviated and delayed

Allows you to manually or automatically assign one of four ring types to each call appearance on a telephone. Whatever treatment you assign to a call appearance is automatically assigned to each of its bridged call appearances.

Ringing options

Provides multi-appearance telephone users with different ringing patterns. This feature primarily affects audible ringing for calls directed to telephones that are off hook, or calls directed to idle and active CALLMASTER telephones.

Send all calls

Allows users to temporarily direct all incoming calls to coverage regardless of the assigned call-coverage redirection criteria. Covering users can temporarily remove their telephones from the coverage path. The feature is activated and deactivated via a button or access code.

Special dial tone

Provides the ability to play a special dial tone whenever an analog set is not able to receive calls. When such conditions as call forward all calls, call forward busy/no answer, send all calls, or do not disturb are activated on a telephone set, a special dial tone lets you know that you cannot receive any calls.

Station hunting

Routes calls made to a busy extension to another extension. To use station hunting, you create a station hunting chain that governs the order in which a call routes from one extension to the next when the called extension is busy. Each extension in the chain links to only one subsequent extension. However, an extension may be linked from any number of extensions.

Station hunt before coverage

This feature changes the interaction that occurs between station hunting and call coverage. Station hunt before coverage causes a call going to a busy station to go through a station hunting process before going to coverage. If all the stations in the hunt group are busy, the call will go to the coverage path.

Station self display

Station self display shows the extension number of the telephone set when a user either dials the feature access code while off-hook, or depresses the `INSPECT` button when on-hook. The dialed number will be displayed once the user starts to dial. This feature is helpful to people who move from one desk to another while they are working. This feature is also used by maintenance personnel to ensure that an extension number is correctly administered.

Station used as a virtual extension

Allows a customer to assign multiple, individual, virtual extensions to one physical phone. The physical phone must be analog and on the local switch. The administrator can set each virtual extension with a unique ring pattern to identify the extension for which the incoming call is intended. For example, an administrator could assign three virtual extensions, each with a unique ring pattern, to a single telephone shared by three roommates in a college dormitory. This feature affects incoming calls only; all outgoing calls are associated with the physical extension.

Support for the Hewlett Packard DL380G2 server

Communication Manager is supported on Hewlett Packard (HP) DL380G2 servers in an S8700 IP-connect system configuration (an S8700 Media Server with a G600 Media Gateway).

Telephone display

Provides multi-appearance telephone users with updated call and message information. This information is displayed on a display-equipped telephone. The information displayed depends upon the display mode selected by the user. Information that allows personalized call answering is available on many calls.

Users may select any of the following as the display message language: English (default), French, Italian, or Spanish. In addition, messages can be administered on the system in a fifth language. The language for display messages is selected by each user.

Telephone self administration

The telephone self administration capability allows you to program feature buttons on the telephone yourself.

Temporary bridged appearance

Allows multi-appearance telephone users in a terminating extension group or personal central office line group to bridge onto an existing group call. If a call has been answered using the call pickup feature, the originally called party can bridge onto the call. This feature also allows a called party to bridge onto a call that redirects to coverage before the called party can answer it.

Terminating extension group

Allows an incoming call to ring (either audible or silent alerting) as many as four telephones at the same time. Any user in the group can answer the call. Any telephone can be administered as a group member. Only a multi-appearance telephone can be assigned a feature button with an associated status lamp, however.

The feature button allows the user to select a terminating extension group call appearance for answering or bridging onto an existing call but not for call origination. For example, a department in a large store might have three telephones. Anyone in the department can answer the call. The salesperson most qualified to answer the call can bridge onto the call.

Time of day routing

Provides the most economical routing of ARS and AAR calls. This routing is based on the time of day and day of the week that each call is made. Up to eight TOD routing plans may be administered, each scheduled to change up to six times a day for each day in the week.

This allows you to take advantage of lower calling rates during specific times of the day and week. In addition, companies with locations in different time zones can use different locations that have lower rates at different times of the day or week. This feature is also used to change patterns during the times an office is closed in order to reduce or eliminate unauthorized calls.

Timed call disconnection for outgoing trunk calls

This feature provides the capability to automatically disconnect an outgoing trunk call after an administrable amount of time. Warning tones are applied to all parties on the call prior to the disconnection.

The amount of time that can elapse before the trunk is dropped can be specified, and can vary between 2-999 minutes. If the timer field is blank, which is the default value, then the feature is disabled and the trunk will not be automatically disconnected.

Timed call disconnection applies to all outgoing trunk calls initiated by a party belonging to a specified Class of Restriction (COR).

Prior to disconnecting the trunk, warning tones are applied to all parties on the call. The first warning tone occurs when one minute is remaining on the call. The second warning tone occurs when 30 seconds are remaining on the call.

Transfer

Allows telephone users to transfer trunk or internal calls to other telephones within the system without attendant assistance. This feature provides a convenient way to connect a party with someone better qualified to handle the call.

Abort transfer

Allows a user to abort a transfer attempt by pressing a non-idle line appearance. The call being transferred would be taken off a transfer-type hold and be put on a traditional hold. The transfer will also be aborted when you hang up (going on-hook), unless transfer upon hang-up is activated on the switch. This is an optional feature at the system level.

Transfer — outgoing trunk to outgoing trunk

Allows a user or attendant to initiate two or more outgoing trunk calls and then transfer the trunks together. The transfer operation removes the original user from the connection and conferences the outgoing trunks. Alternatively, the controlling party can establish a conference call with the outgoing trunks and then drop out of the conference, leaving only the outgoing trunks on the conference. This is an optional enhancement to trunk-to-trunk transfer and requires careful administration and use. DCS trunk turnaround may be a safer alternative to this feature.

Transfer recall

Returns the unanswered transfer calls back to the person who transferred the call. Transfer recall uses a priority alerting signal, and the display on the telephone shows “rt”, which indicates a returned call from a failed transfer operation.

Transfer upon hang-up

Provides you with the ability to transfer a call by hanging up instead of having to press the transfer button a second time. You would press the transfer button, dial the number the call is being transferred to and then hang up. This is an optional feature at the system level. You will still be able to transfer a call by pressing the transfer button a second time.

Trunk-to-trunk transfer

Allows the attendant or telephone user to connect an incoming trunk call to an outgoing trunk call. This feature is particularly useful when a caller outside the system calls a user or attendant and requests a transfer to another outside number. For example, a worker, away on business, can call in and have the call transferred elsewhere. The system assures that incoming central office (CO) trunks without disconnect supervision are not transferred to outgoing trunks or other incoming central office trunks without disconnect supervision.

Trunk flash

Trunk flash allows a feature or function button on a multifunction telephone or attendant console to be assigned as a flash button. Pressing this button while connected to a trunk (which must have been administered to allow trunk flash) causes the system to send a flash signal out over the connected trunk.

Trunk flash enables multifunction telephones to access central office customized services that are provided by the central office to which the system running Communication Manager is connected. These services are electronic features, such as conference and transfer, that are accessed by a sequence of flash signal and dial signals from the system station on an active trunk call.

The trunk flash feature can help to reduce the number of trunk lines connected to the system. “Digit 1 as flash” as used in Italy, and the United Kingdom will not serve as the flash button in this application.

Index

Numerics

- 2402 DCP digital telephone, 87
- 2420 DCP digital telephone, 87, 129
 - personalized labels, 129
 - voice mail retrieval button, 88, 117, 129
- 2420 DCP telephone
 - firmware download enhancements, 88
 - personalized labels for, 88
- 2B-channel transfer, 75
- 3410 wireless telephone, 88, 122, 131
- 3606 wireless VoIP telephone, 89, 123, 131
- 4600-series Internet Protocol (IP) telephones, 89, 130
 - 4620 IP telephone
 - katakana characters, 90, 103, 130
 - voice mail retrieval button, 91, 130
- 4602 and 4602SW IP telephones, 89
- 4610SW IP telephone, 89
- 4620 and 4630 IP telephones, 90
- 4620 IP telephone
 - personalized labels for, 88
- 4630 IP telephone
 - personalized labels for, 88
- 4690 IP conference room speaker phone, 90
- 4690 IP conference station, 90
- 6200-series analog telephones, 91, 129
- 6400-series DCP digital telephones, 91, 130
 - tip/ring interface module, 91, 130
- 800-service trunks, 149
- 802.1p/Q, 154
- 8400-series DCP digital telephones, 92, 130

A

- AAR. *See* Automatic Alternate Routing (AAR)
- AAR/ARS. *See* Automatic Alternate Routing/Automatic Route Selection (AAR/ARS)
- AAS. *See* Auto-Available Split (AAS)
- abandoned call, 60
- abandoned call search, 60
- Abbreviated Dialing (AD), 88, 225
 - labeling, 225
 - on-hook programming, 226
- abort conference on hangup, 77
- abort transfer, 245

- about this book, 25
 - purpose, 25
 - what it contains, 25
 - who should read, 25
- ACB. *See* Automatic Call Back (ACB)
- access security gateway, 185
- access, private network, 151
- accessing the attendant, 45
- ACD. *See* Automatic Call Distribution (ACD)
- active dialing, 226
- ACTR. *See* Automatic Customer Telephone Rearrangement (ACTR)
- ACW. *See* After Call Work (ACW)
- AD. *See* Abbreviated Dialing (AD)
- add/remove skills, 71
- adjunct route support for network call redirection, 56
- adjunct routing, 61
- Adjunct Switch Application Interface (ASAI), 43, 56
 - adjunct route support for network call redirection, 56
 - co-resident DEFNINTY LAN Gateway (DLG), 57
 - Direct Agent Announcement (DAA), 57
 - flexible billing, 58
 - pending work mode change, 58
 - trunk group identification, 58
 - User-to-User Information (UUI), 58
- administered connections, 169
- administrable language displays, 103
- administrable loss plan, 103
- administrable time-out on call timer, 226
- administration
 - automatic routing, 176
 - call management, 62
 - change notification, 219
 - duplicate agent login ID, 70
 - agent-loginID skill pair increase, 70
 - monitoring calls, 51
 - property management, 100
 - site, 218
- Administration Without Hardware (AWOH), 121, 127, 201
- admission control, 157
- admonishments
 - caution, 27
 - danger, 27
 - note, 27
 - security alert, 27
 - tip, 27
 - warning, 27
- advanced Avaya Communication Manager offering, 32
- Advanced Encryption Standard (AES), 185
- Advanced Private Line Termination (APLT), 139
- advanced vector routing, 66
- Advice of Charge (AOC), 205
- AEA. *See* Avaya Encryption Algorithm (AEA)

- AES encryption algorithm for bearer channels, 185
- AES. *See* Advanced Encryption Standard (AES)
- After Call Work (ACW), 69
- alphanumeric dialing, 97, 226
- alternate facility restriction levels, 176, 186, 201
- alternate gatekeeper and registration addresses, 153
- alternate operations support system alarm, 186
- analog
 - 6200-series telephones, 91, 129
 - CAMA - E911 trunk group, 195
 - TTY over analog trunks, 160
- announcement sources for the G700 Media Gateway, 202
- announcements, 202
 - announcement sources for the G700 Media Gateway, 202
 - local announcements on the G700 Media Gateway, 203
 - multiple music sources, 214
 - Voice Announcement over LAN (VAL), 202
 - Voice Announcement over LAN (VAL) Manager, 202, 218
- announcements for precedence calling, 235
- answer detection, 179
- answer supervision by time-out, 180
- AOC. *See* Advice of Charge (AOC)
- API. *See* Application Programming Interface (API)
- APLT. *See* Advanced Private Line Termination (APLT)
- Application Programming Interface (API), 43
 - Adjunct Switch Application Interface (ASAI), 43
 - Communication Manager API, 43
 - DAPI, 44
 - JTAPI, 44
 - TAPI, 44
 - TSAPI, 44
- Application Server Interface (ASI), 82, 172
- approximate charge for calls, 205
- ARS. *See* Automatic Route Selection (ARS)
- ASA. *See* Average Speed of Answer (ASA) routing
- ASAI. *See* Adjunct Switch Application Interface (ASAI)
- ASCII character set, 100
- ASI. *See* Application Server Interface (ASI)
- asynchronous links, 171, 213
- Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM), 131, 136
 - Circuit Emulation Service (ATM-CES), 136
 - Port Network Connectivity (ATM-PNC), 131
 - over WAN, 132
 - WAN Spare Processor (WSP), 132, 181
 - WAN Spare Processor (WSP) Manager, 131, 217
- ATM-CES. *See* Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM), Circuit Emulation Service (ATM-CES)
- ATM-PNC. *See* Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM), Port Network Connectivity (PNC)
- attendant
 - auto start, 51
 - auto-manual splitting, 50
 - automated, 47
 - backup, 46
 - backup alerting, 48
 - call handling, 47
 - call waiting, 48
 - calling of inward restricted stations, 48
 - conferencing, 48
 - console, 92
 - crisis alert, 51
 - dial access to, 45
 - direct extension selection with busy lamp field, 52
 - display of Class of Restriction (COR), 163
 - don't split, 51
 - functions using Distributed Communications System (DCS) protocol, 46, 150
 - control of trunk group access, 46
 - direct trunk group selection, 46, 51, 150
 - display, 50, 150
 - inter-PBX attendant calls, 47
 - individual access to, 45
 - intrusion (call offer), 48
 - listed directory number, 48
 - lockout — privacy, 47
 - override of diversion features, 49
 - position report, 211
 - priority queue, 49
 - QSIG Centralized Attendant Service (CAS), 163
 - recall, 45
 - release loop operation, 49
 - return call, 163
 - room status, 46, 97
 - serial calling, 49
 - split swap, 47
 - timed reminder, 50
 - trunk group access, 52
 - trunk group busy/warning indicators, 52
 - trunk identification, 52
 - vectoring, 47
 - Visually Impaired Attendant Service (VIAS), 53
- audible message waiting, 107
- AUDIX
 - embedded, 108
 - INTUITY, 110
 - mailboxes, 108
 - one-step recording, 112
- authorization codes — 13 digits, 187, 203
- auto answer ICOM, 232
- auto reserve agents, 63

- auto start, 51
 - Auto-Available Split (AAS), 61
 - auto-in work mode, 61
 - auto-manual splitting, 50
 - automated attendant, 47
 - automatic alternate conditional routing, 151
 - Automatic Alternate Routing (AAR), 176
 - Automatic Alternate Routing/Automatic Route Selection (AAR/ARS), 82
 - dialing without FAC, 177
 - overlap sending, 177
 - partitioning, 177
 - automatic answer
 - intercom, 232
 - internal, 233
 - Automatic Call Back (ACB), 226
 - for analog telephones, 227
 - Automatic Call Distribution (ACD), 59, 61, 64, 228
 - automatic circuit assurance, 150, 203, 208
 - Automatic Customer Telephone Rearrangement (ACTR), 121
 - automatic hold, 227
 - Automatic Route Selection (ARS), 177
 - automatic routing features, 176
 - automatic selection of Direct Inward Dialing (DID) numbers, 97
 - automatic transmission measurement system, 203
 - automatic wakeup, 98
 - auxiliary trunks, 139
 - Avaya business advocate, 63
 - enhancements, 63
 - auto reserve agents, 63
 - call selection override per skill, 63
 - dynamic percentage adjustment, 63
 - dynamic queue position, 63
 - dynamic threshold adjustment, 63
 - Least Occupied Agent (LOA), 71
 - logged-in advocate agent counting, 63
 - percent allocation distribution, 64
 - reserve agent time in queue activation, 64
 - VuStats, 73
 - Avaya call center
 - basic, 73
 - deluxe, 73
 - elite, 73
 - features supported on the Avaya G700 Media Gateway, 73
 - Avaya Call Management System (CMS), 64, 216
 - dual links to CMS, 70
 - measurement of ATM, 69, 136
 - site statistics for remote port networks, 72
 - Avaya Communication Manager, 31
 - advanced offering, 32
 - configuration manager, 217
 - fault/performance manager, 218
 - Octel QSIG integration, 163
 - on an S8100 Media Server, 95
 - overview, 31
 - PC console, 94
 - Avaya computer telephony, 55
 - Avaya Directory Enabled Management (DEM), 112, 219
 - Avaya Encryption Algorithm (AEA), 185
 - Avaya extension to cellular, 95, 123
 - Avaya extension to cellular/OPS
 - off-PBX station (OPS), 124
 - what's new, 124
 - Avaya IA770 Intuity Audix Messaging Application (embedded Intuity 5.1 messaging—Linux), 111
 - Avaya Installation Wizard, 33
 - Avaya Integrated Management, 202, 203, 217, 219
 - Avaya Interactive Response (IR), 107
 - Avaya IP agent, 92, 130
 - Avaya IP Softphone, 92
 - for pocket PC, 94
 - Avaya R300 remote office communicator, 221
 - Avaya site administration, 218
 - Avaya SoftConsole, 95
 - Avaya virtual routing, 64
 - Avaya VoIP Monitoring Manager (VMON), 149, 218
 - Avaya Wireless Telephone Solutions (AWTS), 122
 - Average Speed of Answer (ASA) routing, 66
 - AWOH. *See* Administration Without Hardware (AWOH)
 - AWTS. *See* Avaya Wireless Telephone Solutions (AWTS)
-
- ## B
- backup alerting, 48, 193
 - barrier codes, 193, 204
 - Basic Call Management System (BCMS), 62
 - reports, 62
 - Basic Rate Interface (BRI), 141
 - BCD. *See* Binary Coded Decimal (BCD)
 - BCMS. *See* Basic Call Management System (BCMS)
 - Bellcore calling name ID, 104, 147, 227
 - Best Service Routing (BSR), 66
 - polling over IP without B channel, 66
 - Binary Coded Decimal (BCD), 100
 - block collect call, 104, 187
 - blockage study report, 211
 - BRI. *See* Basic Rate Interface (BRI)
 - bridged call appearance
 - multi-appearance telephone, 227
 - single-line telephone, 228

BSR. *See* Best Service Routing (BSR)
bulletin board, 108, 204
busy tone disconnect, 104
busy verification of telephones and trunks, 204

C

CAC. *See* Call Admission Control (CAC)
CAG. *See* Coverage Answer Group (CAG)
Cajun rules, 156
call accounting
 INTUITY, 113
 INTUITY lodging, 114
 Xiox, 101
Call Admission Control (CAC) bandwidth management, 155
call-by-call service selection, 142
call center, 55
 messaging, 67
 release control, 65
call charge information, 205
call-classifier board, 180
call completion, 161
call control, 156
call coverage, 118, 166, 228
 alphanumeric field designation, 228
 and CAS, 166
 changeable coverage paths, 228
 redirection intervals, 229
 report, 211
 time of day, 228
Call Coverage Remote Off Net (C-CRON), 166
Call Detail Recording (CDR), 82, 171, 172, 204, 205
 display of physical extension, 206
call distribution based on skill, 71
call forwarding
 all calls, 229
 busy/don't answer, 229
 diversion, 161
 override, 229
call handling, 47
Call Independent Signaling Connections (CISC), 162
Call Management System (CMS)
 measurement of ATM, 69, 136
call offer, 162
call park, 229
call pickup, 229
 group call pickup, 230
call prompting, 65
 call center messaging, 67
 data collection, 65
 Data In/Voice Answer (DIVA), 65
call redirection intervals, 229
call redirection to multimedia endpoint, 83
call restrictions, 187, 206
call routing, 176
call selection override per skill, 63
call transfer, 162
call vectoring, 66
 advanced vector routing, 66
 Average Speed of Answer (ASA) routing, 66
 Class of Restriction (COR) for VDN, 67
 Expected Wait Time (EWT), 67
 holiday vectoring, 67
call waiting, 48
Call Work Codes (CWC), 69
called name ID, 162
Caller Emergency Service Identification (CESID), 141
Caller ID (ICLID)
 on analog trunks, 147, 230
 on digital trunks, 147, 230
Caller Information Forwarding (CINFO), 74
calling of inward restricted stations, 48
calling party/billing number, 206
calls
 accounting, 113
 charging for service, 205
 disconnecting, 231
 monitoring, 51
 placing, 50
 redirecting, 229
 routing capabilities, 178
CAMA. *See* Centralized Automatic Message Accounting (CAMA)
camp-on/busy-out, 154
capacities, 32
CAS. *See* Centralized Attendant Service (CAS)
category A Communication Manager offering, 32
caution, admonishment meaning of, 27
CCMS. *See* Control Channel Message Set (CCMS)
C-CRON. *See* Call Coverage Remote Off Net (C-CRON)
CCSA. *See* Common Control Switching Arrangements (CCSA)
CDR. *See* Call Detail Recording (CDR)
Center Stage Switch (CSS), 131, 133
 separation of, 133
Central Office (CO), 140, 149
 support on G700 Media Gateway — Russia, 105, 140
Centralized Attendant Service (CAS), 50, 163
Centralized Automatic Message Accounting (CAMA), 141, 195
centralized voice mail via mode code integration, 108
CentreVu computer telephony, 55
CES. *See* Circuit Emulation Service (CES)
CESID. *See* Caller Emergency Service Identification (CESID)

- changeable coverage paths, 228
 - check-in/check-out, 98
 - CIDR. *See* Classless Interdomain Routing (CIDR)
 - CINFO. *See* Caller Information Forwarding (CINFO)
 - Circuit Emulation Service (CES), 136
 - circuit switched, 129, 133, 136
 - circular station hunt group, 69, 230
 - CISC. *See* Call Independent Signaling Connections (CISC)
 - CLAN. *See* Control LAN (CLAN)
 - Class of Restriction (COR), 67, 146, 163, 187, 206, 244
 - attendant display, 163
 - for VDN, 67
 - Class of Service (COS), 207, 215
 - Classless Interdomain Routing (CIDR), 153, 207
 - CMS. *See* Call Management System (CMS)
 - CO. *See* Central Office (CO)
 - code calling access, 84
 - codecs, 155
 - collaboration, 77
 - comment on this book, 28
 - Common Control Switching Arrangements (CCSA), 139
 - communication device support, 87, 129
 - Communication Manager API, 43
 - Communication Manager. *See* Avaya Communication Manager
 - Computer Telephony Integration (CTI), 55, 74
 - concurrent user sessions, 207
 - conference/transfer display prompts, 78
 - conference/transfer toggle/swap, 78
 - conferencing, 77, 230
 - abort conference on hangup, 77
 - automatic answer intercom, 84
 - automatic intercom, 84
 - code calling access, 84
 - conference/transfer display prompts, 78
 - dial intercom, 85
 - group listen, 78
 - group paging, 84
 - hold/unhold, 78
 - loudspeaker paging access, 85
 - manual signaling, 85
 - meet-me, 79
 - multimedia, 83, 175
 - no dial tone, 79
 - no hold conference, 79
 - select line appearance, 80
 - selective party display and drop, 80
 - six party, 77
 - three party, 77
 - transfer toggle/swap, 78
 - whisper page, 86
 - with attendant, 48
 - Connected Party Number (CPN), 58, 193
 - restriction per call, 193
 - restriction per line, 194
 - console
 - attendant, 92
 - Avaya SoftConsole, 95
 - PC, 94
 - consult, 230
 - Control Channel Message Set (CCMS), 133
 - Control LAN (CLAN)
 - load balancing, 155
 - multiple network regions, 153, 182
 - control of trunk group access, 46
 - conventions used in this book, 26
 - Conversant®, 107
 - COR. *See* Class of Restriction (COR)
 - co-resident DEFINITY LAN Gateway (DLG), 57
 - COS. *See* Class of Service (COS)
 - Coverage Answer Group (CAG), 228
 - coverage callback, 230
 - coverage incoming call identification, 231
 - coverage points report, 211
 - CPN. *See* Connected Party Number (CPN)
 - crisis alert
 - to a digital numeric pager, 194
 - to a digital station, 194
 - to an attendant console, 51, 195
 - CSS. *See* Center Stage Switch (CSS)
 - CTI. *See* Computer Telephony Integration (CTI)
 - customer selection of VIP DID numbers, 98
 - customer-provided equipment alarm, 188, 208
 - CWC. *See* Call Work Codes (CWC)
-
- ## D
- DAA. *See* Direct Agent Announcement (DAA)
 - daily wakeup, 98
 - danger, admonishment meaning of, 27
 - DAPI. *See* DEFINITY® Application Programming Interface (DAPI)
 - data call setup, 169
 - data calls, 97
 - data collection, 65
 - data conference, 81, 83, 173, 175
 - data conferencing (T.120) via ESM, 83, 175
 - data hot line, 169
 - Data In/Voice Answer (DIVA), 65

- data interfaces, 169
 - administered connections, 169
 - data call setup, 169
 - data hot line, 169
 - data modules, 170
 - data privacy, 170
 - data restriction, 170
 - default dialing, 170
 - modem pooling, 171
 - multimedia
 - Application Server Interface (ASI), 172
 - call early answer on vectors and stations, 173
 - call redirection to multimedia endpoint, 174
 - calling, 173
 - hold, conference, transfer, and drop, 175
 - Multimedia Call Handling (MMCH), 173
 - multiple-port networks, 175
 - pass advice of charge information to world class BRI endpoints, 175
- data modules, 170
- data privacy, 170, 188
- data restriction, 170, 188
- DCP. *See* Digital Communications Protocol (DCP)
- DCS+. *See* Distributed Communications System plus (DCS+)
- DCS. *See* Distributed Communications System (DCS) protocol
- DDC. *See* Direct Department Calling (DDC)
- default dialing, 170
- defense switched network (DSN), 235
- DEFINITY® AnyWhere, 95
- DEFINITY® Application Programming Interface (DAPI), 44
- DEFINITY® BCS, 32
- DEFINITY® Wireless Business System (DWBS), 122
- deluxe paging, 85
- DEM. *See* Avaya Directory Enabled Management (DEM)
- destination voice endpoint, 82, 173
- dial access to attendant, 45
- Dial Plan Expansion (DPE), 135, 166
- dial-by-name, 99
- Dialed Number Identification Service (DNIS), 69
- DID. *See* Direct Inward Dialing (DID)
- differentiated services (DiffServ), 155
 - type-of-service value, 152
- Digital Communications Protocol (DCP), 87
- digital interfaces, 142
 - Digital Service 1 (DS1) trunks, 136, 148
 - E1, 136, 148
 - T1, 137, 148
 - TTY over digital trunks, 160
 - digital multiplexed interface, 140
 - bit-oriented signalling, 140
 - message-oriented signalling, 140
- Digital Service 1 (DS1) trunks, 136, 148, 149
- digital telephones
 - 2402 DCP, 87
 - 2420 DCP, 87, 129
 - personalized labels, 129
 - voice mail retrieval button, 88, 117, 129
 - 6400-series DCP, 91, 130
 - 8400-series DCP, 92, 130
- DIOD. *See* Direct Inward/Outward Dialing (DIOD)
- Direct Agent Announcement (DAA), 57
- direct agent calling, 69
- Direct Department Calling (DDC), 228
- direct extension selection with busy lamp field, 52
- Direct Inward Dialing (DID), 141, 149
 - automatic number selection, 97
- Direct Inward/Outward Dialing (DIOD), 141, 149
- direct trunk group selection, 46, 51, 150
- directory, 218
- disconnecting unanswered calls, 231
- display, 50, 150
 - and drop conferencing, 80
 - ARP report, 211
 - retrieval of messages, 116
 - VDN for route-to DAC, 68
- distinctive alerting, 166
- distinctive ringing, 231
- Distributed Communications System (DCS) protocol, 150, 161, 167, 231, 233
 - attendant functions, 46, 150
 - control of trunk group access, 46
 - direct trunk group selection, 46, 150
 - display, 50, 150
 - inter-PBX attendant calls, 47
 - automatic circuit assurance, 150, 208
 - Italy, 104, 150
 - over ISDN-PRI D-channel, 150
 - with reroute, 150
- Distributed Communications System plus (DCS+), 150
- DIVA. *See* Data In/Voice Answer (DIVA)
- DLG. *See* co-resident DEFINITY LAN Gateway (DLG)
- DNIS. *See* Dialed Number Identification Service (DNIS)
- do not disturb, 99
- don't answer reason code (for PSA-disassociated stations), 127
- don't split, 51
- DPE. *See* Dial Plan Expansion (DPE)
- DS1. *See* Digital Service 1 (DS1)
- DSN. *See* defense switched network (DSN)
- dual DCP I-channels, 108

dual homing, 236
dual links to CMS, 70
dual wakeup, 99
duplicate agent login ID administration, 70
 agent-loginID skill pair increase, 70
DWBS. *See* DEFINITY® Wireless Business System (DWBS)
dynamic jitter buffers, 156
dynamic percentage adjustment, 63
dynamic queue position, 63
dynamic threshold adjustment, 63

E

E&M signaling — continuous and pulsed, 106, 141
E1 digital interface, 136, 148
E911, 141, 195
E911 ELIN for IP wired extensions, 125, 141
EAS. *See* Expert Agent Selection (EAS)
echo cancellation circuit pack, 136, 148
ECT. *See* ETSI Explicit Call Transfer (ECT) signaling, 74
EIW. *See* Electronic pre-Installation Worksheet (EIW)
Electronic pre-Installation Worksheet (EIW), 34
Electronic Tandem Network (ETN), 151
 automatic alternate conditional routing, 151
 extension number portability, 151
 traveling class marks, 179
 trunk signaling and error recovery, 151
embedded AUDIX, 108
emergency access to the attendant, 195
emergency and journal report, 211
emergency calls, 125, 141, 195
emergency transfer, 183
end office access line hunting, 236
enhanced abbreviated dialing, 231
enhanced information forwarding, 65
enhanced night service, 238
Enhanced Private Switched Communications Service (EPSCS), 139
enhanced telephone display, 232
EPN. *See* Expansion Port Network (EPN)
EPSCS. *See* Enhanced Private Switched Communications Service (EPSCS)
ESM. *See* Expansion Services Module (ESM)
ETN. *See* Electronic Tandem Network (ETN)
ETSI Explicit Call Transfer (ECT) signaling, 74
ETSI functionality, 142
European Union, 131
EWT. *See* Expected Wait Time (EWT)
Expansion Port Network (EPN), 131

Expansion Services Module (ESM), 81, 83, 173, 175
Expected Wait Time (EWT), 67
Expert Agent Selection (EAS), 57, 59, 70, 206
 add/remove skills, 71
 call distribution based on skill, 71
 queue to best ISDN support, 71
extended trunk access, 168
extension number portability, 151
external device alarming, 208
external readable CD ROM, 36

F

FAC. *See* Feature Access Code (FAC)
facility and non-facility associated signaling, 142
facility busy indication, 208
facility restriction levels and traveling class marks, 188, 209
facility test calls, 209
far end mute. *See* selective conference mute
Fax Extended Dialing (FED), 112
Feature Access Code (FAC), 162
feature plus, 143
FED. *See* Fax Extended Dialing (FED)
FIFO. *See* First In/First Out (FIFO)
firmware download, 209
 enhancements for the 2420 DCP telephone, 88
First In/First Out (FIFO), 65
five EPN maximum in MCC1 Media Gateways, 209
flexible billing, 58, 148
Foreign Exchange (FX), 141, 149
forms, 26

G

G350 Media Gateway, 38
G600 Media Gateway, 38
G650 Media Gateway, 39
G700 Media Gateway, 40
Gateway Installation Wizard (GIW), 34
Generalized Conference Call (GCC), 83, 175
generalized route selection, 178
GIW. *See* Gateway Installation Wizard (GIW)
go to cover, 232
group call pickup, 230
group listen, 78, 91
group paging, 84
GuestWorks, 32

H

H.248 link encryption, 188
H.248 media gateway control, 133
H.323 trunk, 137
hairpinning, 158
help, numbers to call, 29
historical reports, 62
history report
 parsing capabilities, 212
hold, 232
hold, conference, transfer, and drop, 83
hold/unhold conference, 78
holiday vectoring, 67
hospitality, 97
hot line service, 233
housekeeping status, 99
HP DL380G2 server, support for, 242
hunt group measurements report, 211
hunt groups, 59
 circular station, 69
 circular station hunting, 230

I

ICC. *See* Internal Call Controller (ICC)
ICLID. *See* Caller ID
ICM. *See* Inbound Call Management (ICM)
IGC. *See* Inter-Gateway Calls (IGC)
Inbound Call Management (ICM), 56
individual attendant access, 45
individual operator access, 45
Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN)
 automatic Termination Endpoint Identifier (TEI), 142
 Basic Rate Interface (ISDN-BRI), 143
 call-by-call service selection, 142
 ETSI functionality, 142
 facility and non-facility associated signaling, 142
 feature plus, 143
 Multiple Subscriber Number (MSN), 144
 NT interface on TN556C, 145
 presentation restriction, 145
 queue to best ISDN support, 71
 trunks, 141
 wideband switching, 145
integration with Cajun rules, 156
intelligent networking, 149
intercom
 automatic, 84
 automatic answer, 84, 232
 dial, 85

Inter-Gateway Calls (IGC), 160
internal automatic answer, 233
Internal Call Controller (ICC), 34, 181
international digital connectivity, 142
International Standardization Organization (ISO), 161
Internet Protocol (IP), 130, 133, 137, 152
 4600-series telephones, 89, 130
 asynchronous links, 171, 213
 Avaya Softphone, 92, 130, 223
 for pocket PC, 94
 H.323 trunk, 137
 loss groups, 137
 Port Network Connectivity (PNC), 133
 report, 211
 trunks, 138
 TTY over Avaya IP trunks, 160
inter-PBX attendant calls, 47
intrusion (call offer), 48
INTUITY
 AUDIX, 110
 call accounting system, 113
 Conversant®, 107
 lodging, 113
 call accounting system, 114
IP overload control, 156
IP packet monitors, 189
IP Softphone and IP Agent
 RoadWarrior mode, 93, 130, 222
 Shared Control mode, 93, 130, 222
 Telecommuter mode, 94, 131, 223
IP. *See* Internet Protocol (IP)
ISDN. *See* Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN)
ISDN-BRI. *See* Integrated Services Digital Network (ISDN), Basic Rate Interface (ISDN-BRI)
ISO. *See* International Standardization Organization (ISO)
Italian Distributed Communications System (DCS)
 protocol, 104, 150

J

Japanese national private networking support, 105, 145
Java Telephony Application Programming Interface (JTAPI), 44
JTAPI. *See* Java Telephony Application Programming Interface (JTAPI)

K

katakana characters, 90, 103, 130

L

LAI. *See* Look-Ahead Interflow (LAI)
 last number dialed, 233
 LDAP. *See* Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP)
 Least Occupied Agent (LOA), 71
 Leave Word Calling (LWC), 115, 163
 QSIG/DCS, 115
 LEC. *See* Local Exchange Carrier (LEC)
 Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP), 220
 line load control, 236
 link recovery, 133
 Linux 8.0 support, 37
 Linux platforms
 time of day clock synchronization, 216
 listed directory number, 48
 LOA. *See* Least Occupied Agent (LOA)
 local announcements on the G700 Media Gateway, 203
 local call timer automatic start/stop, 233
 Local Exchange Carrier (LEC), 104, 147, 227
 local exchange trunks, 148
 800-service, 149
 Central Office (CO), 140, 149
 Digital Service 1 (DS1), 149
 Direct Inward Dialing (DID), 149
 Direct Inward/Outward Dialing (DIOD), 149
 Foreign Exchange (FX), 149
 Wide Area Telecommunications Service (WATS), 149
 local feedback for queued ACD calls, 61
 local music-on-hold, 214
 Local Survivable Processor (LSP), 33, 181
 localization, 103
 logged-in advocate agent counting, 63
 long hold recall, 233
 Look-Ahead Interflow (LAI), 64, 142
 enhanced information forwarding, 65
 look-ahead routing, 142, 178
 loss groups for IP, 137
 loudspeaker paging access, 85
 LSP. *See* Local Survivable Processor (LSP)
 LWC. *See* Leave Word Calling (LWC)

M

mailboxes, AUDIX, 108
 making calls, 50
 malicious call trace, 189, 213
 logging, 189, 213
 over ETSI PRI, 189

management
 calls, 62
 property, 100
 manual message waiting, 115
 manual originating line service, 233
 manual signaling, 85
 Manufacturer-Specific Information (MSI), 71, 164
 Master Control Unit (MCU), 122
 media encryption, 189
 media gateways
 G350, 38
 G600, 38
 G650, 39
 G700, 40
 media servers
 S8100, 35, 36
 S8300
 external readable CD ROM, 36
 Linux 8.0 support, 37
 S8500, 36
 Linux 8.0 support, 37
 S8700, 37
 Linux 8.0 support, 37
 meet-me conference, 79
 message integration, 107
 message retrieval
 display retrieval, 116
 speak-to-me, 116
 Message Sequence Tracer (MST), 116
 Message Waiting Indication (MWI), 164
 messages
 audible message waiting, 107
 demand print, 115
 manual message waiting, 115
 retrieval, 116
 MFP. *See* Multi-Frequency Packet (MFP) signaling —
 Russia
 misoperation handling, 234
 MLPP. *See* multiple level precedence and preemption
 (MLPP)
 MMCH. *See* Multimedia Call Handling (MMCH)
 MMCX. *See* Multimedia Communications Exchange
 (MMCX)
 mobility, 121
 mode code
 centralized voice mail integration, 108
 interface, 117
 modem pooling, 171
 monitoring calls, 51
 MSI. *See* Manufacturer-Specific Information (MSI)
 MSN. *See* Multiple Subscriber Number (MSN)
 MST. *See* Message Sequence Tracer (MST)
 multiappearance preselection and preference, 234

Multi-Frequency Packet (MFP) signaling — Russia, [105](#), [145](#)
 multi-location dial plans, [167](#)
 multimedia. *See* multimedia calling
 Multimedia Call Handling (MMCH), [83](#), [173](#)
 multimedia calling
 Application Server Interface (ASI), [82](#), [172](#)
 call early answer on vectors and stations, [82](#), [173](#)
 call redirection to multimedia endpoint, [83](#), [174](#)
 data conferencing, [81](#)
 (T.120) via ESM, [83](#), [175](#)
 Expansion Services Module (ESM), [81](#), [83](#), [173](#), [175](#)
 hold, conference, transfer, and drop, [83](#), [175](#)
 multiple-port networks, [175](#)
 queuing with voice announcement, [83](#)
 voice and video, [81](#)
 Multimedia Communications Exchange (MMCX), [82](#)
 multiple call handling (forced), [71](#)
 multiple level precedence and preemption (MLPP), [235](#)
 announcements for precedence calling, [235](#)
 dual homing, [236](#)
 end office access line hunting, [236](#)
 line load control, [236](#)
 precedence call waiting, [236](#)
 precedence calling, [236](#)
 precedence routing, [237](#)
 preemption, [237](#)
 worldwide numbering and dialing plan (WNDP), [237](#)
 multiple location support, [179](#)
 for network regions, [153](#), [179](#)
 multiple music sources, [214](#)
 multiple music/audio sources, [74](#)
 multiple network regions per CLAN, [153](#), [182](#)
 multiple split queuing, [72](#)
 Multiple Subscriber Number (MSN), [144](#)
 MultiTech gateway support, [41](#)
 music-on-hold, [214](#)
 MWI. *See* Message Waiting Indication (MWI)

N

name and number identification, [164](#)
 name/number permanent display, [127](#)
 names registration, [100](#)
 NAPT. *See* Network Address Port Translation (NAPT)
 NAT. *See* Network Address Translation (NAT)
 national private networking support — Japan, [105](#), [145](#)
 NCR. *See* Network Call Redirection (NCR)
 Network Address Port Translation (NAPT), [158](#)
 Network Address Translation (NAT), [158](#)
 with shuffling, [158](#)
 network answer supervision, [180](#)

Network Call Redirection (NCR), [56](#), [74](#)
 2B-channel transfer, [75](#)
 network regions, [154](#)
 multiple location support for, [153](#), [179](#)
 network services, [141](#)
 networking and connectivity, [129](#)
 new features and enhancements
 release 2.0
 Avaya extension to cellular/OPS, [124](#)
 what's new, [124](#)
 night service, [238](#)
 enhanced, [238](#)
 no dial tone conferencing, [79](#)
 no hold conference, [79](#)
 node number routing, [178](#)
 note, admonishment meaning of, [27](#)
 NT interface on TN556C, [145](#)

O

OCM. *See* Outbound Call Management (OCM)
 Octel integration, [117](#), [163](#)
 off-PBX station (OPS), [124](#)
 off-premises station, [223](#)
 on-hook programming, [226](#)
 Open System Interconnect (OSI), [141](#)
 operator dial access, [45](#)
 optional software, [32](#)
 OSI. *See* Open System Interconnect (OSI)
 Outbound Call Management (OCM), [56](#)
 Overall Loudness Rating, [137](#)
 override of diversion features, [49](#)
 overview of Avaya Communication Manager, [31](#)

P

packet error history report, [211](#)
 paging access
 loudspeaker, [85](#)
 parsing capabilities of the history report, [212](#)
 pass advice of charge information to world class BRI endpoints, [175](#)
 pass advice of charge to BRI endpoints, [205](#)
 PASTE. *See* PC Application Software Translation Exchange (PASTE)
 PAT. *See* Port Address Translation (PAT)
 path replacement with path retention, [164](#)
 PC Application Software Translation Exchange (PASTE), [75](#)
 PCOL. *See* Personal Central Office Line (PCOL)
 pending work mode change, [58](#)

per call CPN restriction, 193
per line CPN restriction, 194
percent allocation distribution, 64
Periodic Pulse Metering (PPM), 205
Permanent Virtual Paths (PVP), 132
Personal Central Office Line (PCOL), 145
Personal Station Access (PSA), 127
 name/number permanent display, 127
personalized labels, 129
 for the Abbreviated Dialing (AD) system list
 2420 DCP telephone, 88
 4620 IP telephone, 88
 4630 IP telephone, 88
personalized ringing, 239
placing calls, 50
PMS. *See* Property Management System (PMS)
PNA. *See* Private Network Access (PNA)
Port Address Translation (PAT), 158
port network and gateway connectivity, 131
port network and link usage report, 211
Port Network Connectivity (PNC)
 Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM), 131
 over WAN, 132
 Internet Protocol (IP), 133
posted messages, 239
power failure transfer, 183
PPM. *See* Periodic Pulse Metering (PPM)
PPN. *See* Processor Port Network (PPN)
precedence call waiting, 236
precedence calling, 236
precedence routing, 237
preemption, 237
presentation restriction, 145
PRI. *See* Primary Rate Interface (PRI)
Primary Rate Interface (PRI), 141, 148
priority calling, 239
priority queue, 49, 163
privacy
 attendant lockout, 47, 186
 auto exclusion, 195
 manual exclusion, 196
Private Network Access (PNA), 151
private networking and connectivity, 129
processor occupancy report, 211
Processor Port Network (PPN), 131
Property Management System (PMS), 98, 171
 digit to insert/delete, 100
 interface, 100
PSA. *See* Personal Station Access (PSA)
PSTN. *See* Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN)
public network call priority, 106

public networking and connectivity, 147
Public Switched Telephone Network (PSTN), 74
pull transfer, 240
PVP. *See* Permanent Virtual Paths (PVP)

Q

QoS. *See* Quality of Service (QoS)
QSIG, 142
 Avaya Communication Manager/Octel integration, 163
 basic, 161
 call completion, 161
 call forwarding (diversion), 161
 Call Independent Signaling Connections (CISC), 162
 call offer, 162
 call transfer, 162
 called name ID, 162
 Centralized Attendant Service (CAS), 163
 attendant return call, 163
 priority queue, 163
 RLT emulation through a PRI, 163
 Class of Restriction (COR), attendant display, 163
 Leave Word Calling (LWC), 115
 Manufacturer-Specific Information (MSI), 164
 Message Waiting Indication (MWI), 164
 name and number identification, 164
 overview, 161
 path replacement with path retention, 164
 reroute after diversion to voice mail, 165
 stand-alone path replacement, 165
 supplementary services and rerouting, 166
 VALU, 166
 call coverage, 166
 call coverage and CAS, 166
 distinctive alerting, 166
QSIG/DCS
 Leave Word Calling (LWC), 115
 voice mail interworking, 117, 151, 165
Quality of Service (QoS), 152, 154
 802.1p/Q, 154
 call control, 156
 codecs, 155
 differentiated services (DiffServ), 155
 dynamic jitter buffers, 156
 for VoIP, 157
 integration with Cajun rules, 156
 RSVP, 157
 shuffling and hairpinning, 158
 to endpoints, 157
 variable length ping, 160
 Variable Length Subnet Mask (VLSM), 161

queue status indications, 62
queue to best ISDN support, 71
queuing
 multiple split, 72
 with voice announcement, 83

R

R300. *See* remote office communicator (R300)
real-time reports, 62
reason codes, 72
recall, 45
recall signaling, 240
recalling the attendant, 45
recent change history report, 212
recorded telephone dictation access, 240
redirection of calls, 229
 call forward busy/don't answer, 229
 call forwarding all calls, 229
 call forwarding override, 229
 call redirection intervals, 229
 on no answer, 72
refresh route report, 212
release 2.0
 new features and enhancements
 Avaya extension to cellular/OPS, 124
 what's new, 124
Release Link Trunks (RLT), 146, 163
 emulation through a PRI, 163
release loop operation, 49
reliability and survivability, 181
remote access trunks, 146, 223
remote logout of agent, 75
remote office communicator (R300), 221
reports, 211
 attendant position, 211
 blockage study, 211
 call coverage, 211
 coverage points, 211
 display ARP, 211
 emergency and journal, 211
 historical, 62
 parsing capabilities of, 212
 hunt group measurements, 211
 Internet Protocol (IP), 211
 management, 62
 packet error history, 211
 port network and link usage, 211

reports, (continued)
 processor occupancy, 211
 real-time, 62
 recent change history, 212
 refresh route, 212
 summary, 212
 tandem traffic, 212
 traffic, 212
 trunk group detailed measurement, 212
reroute after diversion to voice mail, 165
reserve agent time in queue activation, 64
reset shift call, 240
Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP), 157
restriction — controlled, 192, 196, 214
ringback queuing, 240
ringer cutoff, 241
ringing
 abbreviated and delayed, 241
 distinctive, 231
 options, 241
 personalized, 239
RLT. *See* Release Link Trunks (RLT)
room numbers dialing plan, 101
room status, 46, 97
routing calls, 176
routing features, 176
RSVP. *See* Resource Reservation Protocol (RSVP)
Russian CO support on G700 Media Gateway, 105, 140
Russian Multi-Frequency Packet (MFP) signaling, 105, 145

S

S8100 Media Server, 35, 36
S8100 Media Server embedded Intuity AUDIX, 112
S8300 Media Server
 external readable CD ROM, 36
 Linux 8.0 support, 37
S8500 Media Server, 36
 Linux 8.0 support, 37
S8700 Media Server, 37
 Linux 8.0 support, 37
satellite hops, 151
SBS. *See* Separation of Bearer and Signaling (SBS)
scheduling, 215
screens, *see* forms, 26
security alert, admonishment meaning of, 27
Security Violation Notification (SVN), 192, 215

- security, privacy, and safety, 185
 - end user, 193
 - backup alerting, 193
 - barrier codes, 193
 - crisis alert to a digital numeric pager, 194
 - crisis alert to a digital station, 194
 - crisis alert to an attendant console, 195
 - emergency access to the attendant, 195
 - per call CPN restriction, 193
 - per line CPN restriction, 194
 - privacy, auto exclusion, 195
 - privacy, manual exclusion, 196
 - restriction — controlled, 196
 - station lock, 196
 - system administrator, 185
 - access security gateway, 185
 - AES encryption algorithm for bearer channels, 185
 - alternate facility restriction levels, 186
 - alternate operations support system alarm, 186
 - call restrictions, 187
 - Class of Restriction (COR), 187
 - customer-provided equipment alarm, 188
 - data privacy, 188
 - data restriction, 188
 - facility restriction levels and traveling class marks, 188
 - H.248 link encryption, 188
 - malicious call trace, 189
 - media encryption, 189
 - privacy — attendant lockout, 186
 - restriction — controlled, 192
 - Security Violation Notification (SVN), 192
 - signaling encryption for SIP trunks, 192
 - station security codes, 192
 - tripwire security, 192
 - select line appearance conferencing, 80
 - selective conference mute, 49, 81
 - selective conference party display and drop, 80
 - self-administered telephones, 91, 243
 - send all calls, 241
 - Separation of Bearer and Signaling (SBS), 135
 - serial calling, 49
 - service observing, 75
 - by COR, 76
 - of VDNs, 76
 - remote, 76
 - vector-initiated, 76
 - Session Initiation Protocol (SIP), 89, 125, 138, 155, 192
 - Instant Messaging and Presence (IMPress), 138
 - trunks, 139
 - shuffling, 158
 - and NAT devices, 158
 - signaling encryption for SIP trunks, 192
 - single-digit dialing and mixed station numbering, 101
 - SIP. *See* Session Initiation Protocol (SIP)
 - site statistics for remote port networks, 72
 - six party conferencing, 77
 - skill, 71
 - sniffers, 189
 - speak-to-me message retrieval, 116
 - special applications, 197
 - special dial tone, 241
 - SREPN. *See* Survivable Remote Expansion Port Network (SREPN)
 - stand-alone path replacement, 165
 - station hunt before coverage, 242
 - station hunting, 242
 - station lock, 196
 - station security codes, 192, 215
 - station self display, 242
 - station used as a virtual extension, 242
 - suite check-in, 101
 - summary report, 212
 - supplementary services and rerouting, 166
 - supplementary services, definition of, 161
 - support for the HP DL380G2 server, 242
 - Survivable Remote Expansion Port Network (SREPN), 183
 - SVC. *See* Switched Virtual Circuits (SVC)
 - SVN. *See* Security Violation Notification (SVN)
 - switch
 - Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM), 131, 136
 - CSS (direct connect), 131
 - Switched Virtual Circuits (SVC), 132
 - system directory, 218
 - system management, 201
-
- ## T
- T.120 protocols, 83, 175
 - T1 digital interface, 137, 148
 - tandem switch, 151
 - tandem through, 151
 - Tandem Tie-Trunk Network (TTTN), 151
 - tandem traffic report, 212
 - TAPI. *See* Telephony Application Programming Interface (TAPI)
 - TDD. *See* Telecommunication Devices for the Deaf (TDD) and TTY
 - TEI. *See* Termination Endpoint Identifier (TEI)
 - Telecommunication Devices for the Deaf (TDD), 158
 - telecommuting access, 222

- telecommuting and remote office, 221
- telephone display, 243
- telephones
 - analog
 - 6200-series, 91, 129
 - announcements, 202
 - digital
 - 2402 DCP, 87
 - 2420 DCP, 87, 88, 117, 129
 - firmware download enhancements, 88
 - personalized labels for, 88
 - 6400-series DCP, 91, 130
 - 8400-series DCP, 92, 130
 - Internet Protocol (IP)
 - 4600-series, 89, 130
 - 4620 & 4630, personalized labels for, 88
 - self-administration, 91, 243
 - wireless
 - 3410, 88, 122, 131
 - 3606 VoIP, 89, 123, 131
- telephony, 225
- Telephony Application Programming Interface (TAPI), 44
- Telephony Services Application Programming Interface (TSAPI), 44
- temporary bridged appearance, 243
- Temporary Signaling Connection (TSC), 161
- tenant partitioning, 214, 215
- Terminal Translation Initialization (TTI), 127, 215
- terminating extension group, 243
- Termination Endpoint Identifier (TEI), automatic, 142
- three party conferencing, 77
- tie trunks, 146
- time of day, 228
- time of day clock synchronization
 - Linux platforms, 216
 - UNIX platforms, 216
 - via LAN source, 216
- time of day routing, 178, 244
- timed automatic disconnect for outgoing trunk calls, 146
- timed call disconnection for outgoing trunk calls, 244
- timed reminders, 50
- tip, admonishment meaning of, 27
- TN2501AP announcement circuit pack, 202
- TN464GP/TN2464BP universal DS-1 circuit pack, 148
- TN556C circuit pack, 145
- TN787, 83, 175
- TOS. *See* Type-Of-Service (TOS)
- trademarks, 27
- traffic report, 212
- transfer, 244
 - abort, 245
 - outgoing trunk to outgoing trunk, 245
 - recall, 245
 - trunk-to-trunk, 245
 - upon hang-up, 245
- TransTalk 9000 digital wireless system, 128
- traveling class marks, 179
- tripwire security, 192
- trunk call disconnection, 146, 244
- trunk connectivity, 136
- trunk flash, 246
- trunk group
 - access, 52
 - busy/warning indicators to attendant, 52
 - circuits, 216
 - detailed measurement report, 212
 - identification, 58
- trunk identification by attendant, 52
- trunk signaling and error recovery, 151
- trunk types and signaling, 139
- trunks
 - analog
 - Caller ID (ICLID), 147, 230
 - auxiliary, 139
 - Advanced Private Line Termination (APLT), 139
 - echo cancellation, 136, 148
 - digital, 140
 - Caller ID (ICLID), 147, 230
 - Digital Service 1 (DS1), 136, 148
 - Direct Inward Dialing (DID), 141
 - Direct Inward/Outward Dialing (DIOD), 141
 - Foreign Exchange (FX), 141
 - group circuits, 216
 - H.323, 137
 - Internet Protocol (IP), 138
 - ISDN, 141
 - local exchange, 148
 - 800-service, 149
 - Central Office (CO), 140, 149
 - Digital Service 1 (DS1), 149
 - Direct Inward Dialing (DID), 149
 - Direct Inward/Outward Dialing (DIOD), 149
 - Foreign Exchange (FX), 149
 - Wide Area Telecommunications Service (WATS), 149
 - Personal Central Office Line (PCOL), 145
 - Release Link (RLT), 146, 163
 - remote access, 146, 223
 - tandem, 151
 - tie, 146
 - Wide Area Telecommunications Service (WATS), 147

trunk-to-trunk transfer, [245](#)
TSAPI. *See* Telephony Services Application Programming Interface (TSAPI)
TSC. *See* Temporary Signaling Connection (TSC)
TTI. *See* Terminal Translation Initialization (TTI)
TTTN. *See* Tandem Tie-Trunk Network (TTTN)
TTY, [158](#)
 over analog and digital trunks, [160](#)
 over Avaya IP trunks, [160](#)
Type-Of-Service (TOS), [155](#)

U

UCD. *See* Uniform Call Distribution (UCD)
UDP. *See* Uniform Dial Plan (UDP)
UDS1 circuit pack with echo cancellation, [136](#), [148](#)
Unicode support, [90](#)
Uniform Call Distribution (UCD), [228](#)
Uniform Dial Plan (UDP), [166](#)
UNIX platforms
 time of day clock synchronization, [216](#)
usage allocation, [142](#)
User-to-User Information (UUI)
 over the public network, [76](#)
 propagation, [58](#)
UUI. *See* User-to-User Information (UUI)

V

VAL. *See* Voice Announcement over LAN (VAL)
variable length ping, [160](#), [216](#)
Variable Length Subnet Mask (VLSM), [161](#), [216](#)
VDN. *See* Vector Directory Number (VDN)
vector commands, [66](#)
Vector Directory Number (VDN), [67](#), [70](#), [72](#)
 display VDN for route-to DAC, [68](#)
 in a coverage path, [68](#)
 observing on agent answer, [76](#)
 of origin announcement, [68](#)
 override for ASAI messages, [59](#)
 return destination, [68](#)
vectoring, [66](#)
 attendant, [47](#)
 holiday, [67](#)
vector-initiated service observing, [76](#)
VIAS. *See* Visually Impaired Attendant Service (VIAS)
video, [173](#)
VIP wakeup, [101](#)
Virtual LAN (VLAN), [154](#)
virtual Voice Announcements over LAN (virtual VAL), [203](#)

Visually Impaired Attendant Service (VIAS), [53](#)
VLSM. *See* Variable Length Subnet Mask (VLSM)
VMON. *See* VoIP Monitoring Manager (VMON)
Voice Announcement over LAN (VAL), [202](#)
Voice Announcement over LAN (VAL) Manager, [202](#), [218](#)
Voice Carry Over (VCO)
 VCO. *See* Voice Carry Over (VCO)
voice mail integration, [82](#)
voice mail interworking, [165](#)
 QSIG/DCS, [117](#), [151](#)
voice mail retrieval button, [88](#), [91](#), [117](#), [129](#), [130](#)
voice mail system (VMS), [238](#)
voice message retrieval, [118](#)
voice messaging and call coverage, [118](#)
Voice Response Integration (VRI), [76](#)
VoIP Monitoring Manager (VMON), [149](#), [218](#)
VRI. *See* Voice Response Integration (VRI)
VuStats, [73](#)
 login IDs, [73](#)
 service level, [73](#)

W

wakeup
 activation via confirmation tones, [101](#)
 automatic, [98](#)
 daily, [98](#)
 dual, [99](#)
 VIP, [101](#)
WAN Spare Processor (WSP), [132](#), [181](#)
WAN Spare Processor (WSP) Manager, [131](#), [217](#)
warning, admonishment meaning of, [27](#)
WATS. *See* Wide Area Telecommunications Service (WATS)
whisper page, [86](#)
Wide Area Telecommunications Service (WATS), [147](#), [149](#), [177](#)
wideband switching, [145](#)
wireless, [131](#)
 telephones
 3410, [88](#), [122](#), [131](#)
 3606 VoIP, [89](#), [123](#), [131](#)
 X-station mobility, [128](#)
WNDP. *See* worldwide numbering and dialing plan (WNDP)
world class tone detection, [106](#)
worldwide numbering and dialing plan (WNDP), [237](#)
WSP. *See* WAN Spare Processor (WSP)

X

Xiox call accounting, [101](#)
X-station mobility, [128](#)